

---

To my parents, to whom I owe everything and more.

---

---

**Latin: A New Grammar**

**Book of Exercises**

Juan Coderch

---

Latin: A New Grammar

Book of Exercises

First Edition

© 2015 by Juan Coderch

All rights reserved. This book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law.

ISBN: **978-0-9571387-3-5**

Printed by CreateSpace (South Carolina, United States)

---

# Latin: A New Grammar

## Book of Exercises

The numbers refer to the numbered paragraphs, not to the pages.

### Preface

### ALPHABET AND WRITING

- a) The alphabet [1]
- b) Pronunciation [2]

### THE NOMINAL SYSTEM

#### a) Definition of basic grammatical concepts: *case, declension and gender*

- 1. Concepts of *syntactical function, endings* and *case* [3]
- 2. Main syntactical functions and correspondence to cases [4]
- 3. Concept of *declension* [5]
- 4. Concept of *gender* [6]
- 5. Lack of definite article [7]

#### b) Declensions

- 1. 1<sup>st</sup> declension [8]
- 2. 2<sup>nd</sup> declension [9]  
General exercises for the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> declensions [10]
- 3. 3<sup>rd</sup> declension [11]  
General exercises for the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension [12]
- 4. 4<sup>th</sup> declension [13]
- 5. 5<sup>th</sup> declension [14]  
Exercises for all declensions [15]

#### c) Adjectives

- 1. 1<sup>st</sup> class of adjectives [16]
- 2. 2<sup>nd</sup> class of adjectives [17]
- 3. Position of the adjective [18]
- 4. Use of the adjective as a noun [19]

#### d) Numeral adjectives

- 1. Cardinals [20]
- 2. Ordinals [21]
- 3. Multiplicatives [22]
- 4. Distributives [23]

#### e) Comparative and superlative

- 1. (unapplied in this book)
- 2. Accidence [24]
- 3. Syntax [25]

#### f) Pronouns

- 1. Demonstrative pronouns [26]
- 2. Personal pronouns [27]
- 3. Possessive pronouns [28]
- 4. Anaphoric pronoun [29]
- 5. Identity pronouns [30]
- 6. Reflexive pronouns [31]
- 7. Interrogative pronoun and adjective [32]
- 8. Other interrogative pronouns [33]
- 9. Relative pronoun [34]
- 10. Indefinite relative pronoun [35]
- 11. Other indefinite pronouns [36]
- 12. Negative pronouns [37]

#### g) Adverbs and prepositional adverbs

- 1. (unapplied in this book)
- 2. Modal adverbs [38]
- 3. Comparative and superlative of modal adverbs [39]
- 4. Quantitative adverbs [40]
- 5. Adverbs of time [41]
- 6. Adverbs of place [42]
- 7. Interrogative adverbs [43]
- 8. Indefinite adverbs [44]
- 9. Affirmative and negative adverbs [45]
- 10. Prepositional adverbs [46]  
Exercises on all adverbs [47]

#### h) The correlatives

- 1. Correlative adverbs [48]
- 2. Correlative adjectives [49]

---

## THE VERBAL SYSTEM

### a) General observations

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. The tenses
3. The moods
4. The voices
5. Formation of tenses
6. Formation of moods
7. Types of verbs
8. Principal parts

[50]  
[51]  
[52]  
[53]  
[54]  
[55]  
[56]

### b) The four regular conjugations

1. The 1<sup>st</sup> conjugation
2. The 2<sup>nd</sup> conjugation
3. The 3<sup>rd</sup> conjugation
4. The 4<sup>th</sup> conjugation
5. The mixed conjugation

[57]  
[58]  
[59]  
[60]  
[61]

### c) The passive voice

1. Present-stem tenses
2. Perfect-stem tenses

[62]  
[63]

### d) Deponent and semi-deponent verbs

1. Deponent verbs
2. Nominal forms in deponent verbs
3. Semi-deponent verbs
4. Passive deponent verbs

[64]  
[65]  
[66]  
[67]

### e) Verb sum and its compounds

1. Verb sum
2. Compounds of sum
3. Verb possum
4. Verb prosum

[68]  
[69]  
[70]  
[71]

### f) Irregular verbs

1. Verb volo
2. Verb nolo
3. Verb malo
4. Verb eo and its compounds
5. Verb fero and its compounds
6. Verb edo
7. Verb fio
8. Defective verbs

[72]  
[73]  
[74]  
[75]  
[76]  
[77]  
[78]  
[79]

### g) Overview of peculiar constructions

1. Previous notes
2. Peculiar constructions

[80]  
[81]

### h) Compound verbs

1. Compound verbs with a/ab
2. Compound verbs with ad
- ... etc.

[82]  
[83]  
[84-95]

---

## SYNTAX OF CASES

### a) Use of cases

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Nominative
3. Vocative
4. Accusative
5. Genitive
6. Dative
7. Ablative

[96]  
[97]  
[98]  
[99]  
[100]  
[101]

### b) Prepositions

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Prepositions of one case
3. Prepositions of two cases

[102]  
[103]

### c) Expressions of time and place

1. Expressions of time
2. Expressions of place

[104]  
[105]

### d) Regime of verbs and adjectives

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Verbs that rule a given case
3. Adjectives followed by a given case

[106]  
[107]

---

## SYNTAX OF CLAUSES

### a) Simple clauses

1. Describing real actions
2. Expressing potential actions
3. Expressing commands and prohibitions
4. Expressing wishes
5. Asking questions
6. Impersonal verbs

[108]  
[109]  
[110]  
[111]  
[112]  
[113]

### b) Subordinate clauses

1. The concept of *consecutio temporum*
2. Causal clauses
3. Purpose clauses
4. Temporal clauses
5. Concessive clauses
6. Result clauses
7. Conditional clauses
8. Relative clauses
9. Comparative clauses
10. Fear clauses
11. Indefinite clauses
12. Proviso clauses
13. Quominus and quin clauses
14. Summary of the uses of cum
15. Summary of the uses of ut
16. Completive quod clauses

[114]  
[115]  
[116]  
[117]  
[118]  
[119]  
[120]  
[121]  
[122]  
[123]  
[124]  
[125]  
[126]  
[127]  
[128]  
[129]

---

**c) Infinitive clauses**

1. General principles [130]
2. Which tense of the infinitive? [131]
3. Where there is no change of subject [132]
4. Historical infinitive [133]
5. Exclamatory infinitive [134]

**ALIA**

- a) Peculiarities and idioms**
1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Non-verbal expressions [155]
3. Verbal expressions [156]

**d) Participle clauses**

1. General principles [135]
2. The participle is impersonal [136]
3. The temporal correlation [137]
4. Participle as a verb [138]
5. Participle as a noun [139]
6. The ablative absolute [140]

**b) Words that are easily confused**

1. Non-verbal forms [157]
2. Verbal forms [158]

**e) Indirect speech**

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Indirect statement clauses [141]
3. Indirect command clauses [142]
4. Indirect question clauses [143]
5. Subordinate clauses in indirect speech [144]
6. A special technique: *Oratio Obliqua* [145]

**f) Uses of the gerund and gerundive**

1. Definition and forms [146]
2. Uses of the gerund [147]
3. Gerundive replacing the gerund [148]
4. Exceptions to the replacement [149]

**g) The periphrastic conjugation and the supine**

1. The active periphrastic [150]
2. The passive periphrastic [151]
3. The supine [152]

**h) Combination of negatives**

1. Tendencies in the use of negatives [153]
2. Negatives cancelling or reinforcing each other? [154]

## Preface

This Book of Exercises has been written as a companion to *Latin: A New Grammar* (L-ANG). With its circa 900 exercises, it presents the following characteristics:

**a) It can be used as a stand alone resource:** Although it has been written taking the content of L-ANG as point of reference, this does not mean that only students who are using L-ANG in a parallel way can use this book of exercises: it has been written in such a way that any student who wants to practise and reinforce their grammar can make use of it, no matter what grammar or language course they have previously used. There are no cross-references to L-ANG.

At the same time, we would like to remind readers that L-ANG is a grammar book for consultation, not a textbook, and that, in the same vein, this book offers exercises to those students who want to practise and reinforce their grammar, either in general or by going directly to some concrete points.

**b) This book can be used at any stage:** Students who have recently started studying Latin can easily cope with exercises relating to, for example, the declensions, adjectives, etc. More advanced students or students who have a basic knowledge of the language will be challenged by more difficult exercises (on Indirect Speech, for instance).

**c) Gradual difficulty:** As said above, this is a book for practising the language at the same time as reinforcing one's grammar. Although there was no intention to produce progressively difficult exercises, the traditional presentation of grammar makes it so. L-ANG presents grammar in the usual order that all grammar books follow, beginning with declensions and making up to more complicated aspects, like subordinate clauses. It is quite understandable that exercises on the gerundive will be more difficult than those on the first declension, especially taking into account that a student seeking to practise the gerundive will have already covered the basics of the language.

**d) Type of exercises:** The exercises are varied in style, ranging from filling gaps to translation into both Latin and English. This ensures that the student's knowledge is tested thoroughly.

**e) Use of original authors:** A lot of exercises make use of original sentences taken from classical authors. For these sentences, more than 2,100, authors and works are quoted (as in L-ANG, we have considered it unnecessary to add information about the chapter, the paragraph, the line, etc.). However, some of the sentences taken from classical authors may have been shortened in order to illustrate a grammatical point. It could be the case that, in the middle of a sentence, there was some additional language unnecessary for the illustration of that point. In this case, although the quotation and work of the classical author have been kept, this unnecessary information has been removed, as long as doing so did not affect the meaning of the sentence. So, a sentence like *Caesar semper, ut dicis, milites hortabatur* selected for practising the deponent verb *hortor* can be found here as *Caesar semper milites hortabatur*.

In other cases, some words may have been added in square brackets in order to make it easier for the student; for instance, the usual *esse* form that some authors choose to omit in a compound infinitive like *deletum [esse]*.

Examples that show no reference to any classical author have either been made up or were original sentences that have been adapted to such an extent that it is impossible to attribute them to the author.

**f) Parallelism with L-ANG:** I have followed the same layout of chapters and points within chapters as in L-ANG, in order to make it easier for any student who is using it. So, for instance, if adverbs of place are presented in L-ANG in point 6 of chapter G on adverbs, the exercises about adverbs of place are also presented in point 6 of chapter G in the Book of Exercises. Some chapters in L-ANG had an introductory point and, because of the fact that there is no such introductory point in this book of exercises, I have left it with the indication "unapplied in this book", in order to keep the L-ANG number system throughout.

**g) Distribution of exercises:** You may notice that sometimes a long exercise has been divided into blocks by using the symbol ◇. For instance, an exercise that contains twelve sentences to be translated has been divided into two blocks of six each. Students work better with groups of five or six sentences rather than with a large block if desired, this will also allow teachers to distribute the exercises among groups of students more easily.

### Acknowledgments

As this Book of Exercises is a continuation of L-ANG, I must go on expressing my gratitude to two people who, by helping me to make L-ANG possible, go on deserving to be mentioned here, even if they have not been directly involved in this book: Dan Batovici, who taught me how to deal with the practicalities of technology, and Geoffrey Steadman, without whose help and guidance in the procedures of POD none of these books would have seen the light.

The cover has been produced by the Reprographics Unit at the University of St Andrews.

It must be mentioned that a good amount of this Book of Exercises has been written during my periods of stay at the Fondation Hardt, in Geneva. I would like to express my gratitude to the Fondation for providing me with some wonderful stays and an excellent working environment.

You can download a pdf with a partial key from this web site: <http://coderch-greek-latin-grammar.weebly.com>

Juan Coderch

St Andrews, July 2015

## Alphabet and writing

### a) The alphabet

[1]

1/ Apart from the i-j and u-v alternation, there are four letters in the English alphabet that did not exist in the Latin alphabet. Name them:

..... .....

2/ Out of these four letters, three were adopted by Romans in order to transcribe words of Greek origin. Which are they?

..... .....

3/ Write these words in lower case changing the "v" into "u":

vir ↳ .....      vocare ↳ .....      venio ↳ .....

via ↳ .....      video ↳ .....

4/ Write these words in capital letters changing the "u" into "v":

urbs ↳ .....      uterque ↳ .....      unda ↳ .....

ubi ↳ .....      vultus ↳ .....      vulgus ↳ .....

uva ↳ .....      uvidus ↳ .....

5/ Now write these words in lower case, changing the "v" into "u":

VIVERE ↳ .....      VNDIQUE ↳ .....      VBIQVMQVE ↳ .....

VVLGVS ↳ .....      VALLVM ↳ .....

**b) Pronunciation**

[2]

Read these words aloud, paying attention to the pronunciation of the letters in bold:

sound c: **Cicero, circa, cedo, celebrare, occidere**

sound g: **gens, gestare, giganteus, ingens**

sound ll: **puella, pello, difficillimus**

sound ch: **pulcher, character, christianus**

sound ph: **pharmacum, physicus**

## THE NOMINAL SYSTEM

### a) Definition of basic grammatical concepts:

*case, declension and gender*

1. Concepts of *syntactical function, endings* and *case*
2. Main syntactical functions and correspondence to cases
3. Concept of *declension*
4. Concept of *gender*
5. Lack of definite article

### b) Declensions

1. 1<sup>st</sup> declension
2. 2<sup>nd</sup> declension  
General exercises for the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> declensions
3. 3<sup>rd</sup> declension  
General exercises for the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension
4. 4<sup>th</sup> declension
5. 5<sup>th</sup> declension  
Exercises for all declensions

### c) Adjectives

1. 1<sup>st</sup> class of adjectives
2. 2<sup>nd</sup> class of adjectives
3. Position of the adjective
4. Use of the adjective as a noun

### d) Numeral adjectives

1. Cardinals
2. Ordinals
3. Multiplicatives
4. Distributives

### e) Comparative and superlative

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Accidence
3. Syntax

### f) Pronouns

1. Demonstrative pronouns
2. Personal pronouns
3. Possessive pronouns
4. Anaphoric pronoun
5. Identity pronouns
6. Reflexive pronouns
7. Interrogative pronoun and adjective
8. Other interrogative pronouns
9. Relative pronoun
10. Indefinite relative pronoun
11. Other indefinite pronouns
12. Negative pronouns

### g) Adverbs and prepositional adverbs

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Modal adverbs
3. Comparative and superlative of modal adverbs
4. Quantitative adverbs
5. Adverbs of time
6. Adverbs of place
7. Interrogative adverbs
8. Indefinite adverbs
9. Affirmative and negative adverbs
10. Prepositional adverbs  
Exercises on all adverbs

### h) The correlatives

1. Correlative adverbs
2. Correlative adjectives

a) Definition of basic grammatical concepts:  
*case, declension and gender*

**1. Concepts of *syntactical function, endings* and *case***

[3]

**a) Concepts of syntactical function and endings**

Choose the right option:

- |  |              |
|--|--------------|
| In Latin, <i>syntactical function</i> is the role that a word plays in a sentence. | TRUE / FALSE |
| In Latin, the order of words tells us their function in the sentence.              | TRUE / FALSE |
| In Latin, the first word of the sentence is always the subject.                    | TRUE / FALSE |
| In Latin, endings are used to indicate the syntactical function.                   | TRUE / FALSE |
| In Latin, endings can be changed without altering the meaning of the sentence.     | TRUE / FALSE |

**b) Concept of case**

1/ Choose the right option:

- |   |              |
|---|--------------|
| <i>Case</i> is the form that a noun can adopt.                      | TRUE / FALSE |
| <i>Case</i> is not indicated by the endings.                        | TRUE / FALSE |
| <i>Case</i> is used to indicate syntactical function.               | TRUE / FALSE |
| All nouns in Latin change their form according to only one pattern. | TRUE / FALSE |

2/ Name the six cases in Latin:

.....      .....

.....      .....

## 2. Main syntactical functions and correspondence to cases

[4]

### a) Main syntactical functions

1/ Explain what each of the seven following syntactical functions mean and, for each one, write a sentence in English that includes a noun (for instance, the noun "teacher") in this function.

❖ You may need a preposition in some English sentences.

▷ *Subject:*

- It means .....
- Example: .....

▷ *Predicative object:*

- It means .....
- Example: .....

▷ *Addressed object:*

- It means .....
- Example: .....

▷ *Direct object:*

- It means .....
- Example: .....

▷ *Possessive object:*

- It means .....
- Example: .....

▷ *Indirect object:*

- It means .....
- Example: .....

▷ *Circumstantial object:*

- It means .....
- Example: .....

**2/ Observe this sentence:**

*The builder built a house for the general's father, who is a politician.*

What is the syntactical function of the following parts?

- |                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| ➤ the builder: .....  | ➤ father: .....  |
| ➤ the general: .....  | ➤ a house: ..... |
| ➤ a politician: ..... |                  |

**3/ Now do the same with this sentence:**

*Peter, come here and give me the hammer; didn't you hear me? I must finish this table for the owner of the house.*

- |                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| ➤ Peter: .....      | ➤ me [give me]: ..... |
| ➤ you: .....        | ➤ me [hear me]: ..... |
| ➤ this table: ..... | ➤ the owner: .....    |
| ➤ the house: .....  |                       |

**4/ Read these sentences and choose the right option:**

- |   |                            |                  |                    |
|---|----------------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| — <i>Do you see them?</i>                           | ▷ <i>them</i> is           | a/ direct object | b/ indirect object |
| — <i>Did you give them that?</i>                    | ▷ <i>them</i> is           | a/ direct object | b/ indirect object |
| — <i>Tell her that I will receive her tomorrow.</i> | ▷ <i>The first her</i> is  | a/ direct object | b/ indirect object |
|   | ▷ <i>The second her</i> is | a/ direct object | b/ indirect object |

**b) Correspondences between functions and cases****1/ Deduce the role a noun probably plays in a Latin sentence based on its case:**

<i>If the noun is in the...</i>	<i>it probably plays the role of...</i>
genitive	possessive object
nominative	.....
dative	.....
vocative	.....
ablative	.....
accusative	.....

**2/ Now do the opposite: write what case you would use for each function:**

For calling someone: .....

For indirect objects: .....

For predicative objects: .....

For possessive objects: .....

For direct objects: .....

For subjects: .....

For circumst. objects: .....

**3/ Analyze these sentences and say what syntactical function each element has and therefore in what case you would put it in Latin:**

◊ Example: The god brings food for the general.

— *the god*: subject, nominative — *food*: direct object, accusative — *for the general*: indirect object, dative

- The book of the teacher is nice.

— *the book*: .....

- Children, are you ready?

— *children*: .....— *of the teacher*: .....— *you*: .....— *nice*: .....— *ready*: .....

- Boy, he has your book.

— *boy*: .....

- The president of the country has two children.

— *he*: .....— *the president*: .....— *your book*: .....— *of the country*: .....

- I say this to you.

— *two children*: .....— *I*: .....

- He buys books for his friends.

— *this*: .....— *he*: .....— *to you*: .....— *books*: .....

- She tells you this.

— *for his friends*: .....— *she*: .....

- Peter is the brother of my teacher (my teacher's brother).

— *you*: .....— *Peter*: .....— *this*: .....— *the brother*: .....

- They see the door of the house.

— *of my teacher*: .....— *they*: .....

- We are playing with our friends.

— *the door*: .....— *we*: .....— *of the house*: .....— *with our friends*: .....

**3. Concept of *declension***

[5]

a/ Briefly define the concept of declension:

.....  
.....

b/ What does “declining a word” mean?

.....  
.....

c/ How many declensions are there in Latin, and which is the most complex one?

.....  
.....

**4. Concept of *gender***

[6]

a/ How many genders are there in Latin? Name them:

.....  
.....

b/ How can you tell what gender a Latin noun is? Does it always follow logical patterns?

.....  
.....

**5. Lack of definite article**

[7]

Answer this question:

ianua can be translated in English as DOOR, without any kind of article. In what two other ways can ianua be translated?

.....

## b) Declensions

### 1. 1<sup>st</sup> declension

[8]

a/ Write the endings without looking them up:

	singular	plural
Nom.	-	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

b/ Decline the nouns *pecunia, -ae* and *scientia, -ae*:

	singular	plural	singular	plural
Nom.	- <i>pecunia</i>	-	- <i>scientia</i>	-
Voc.	-	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-	-
Abl.	-	-	-	-

c/ Write the nouns *tabula, -ae* and *insula, -ae* in the requested cases:

Acc. pl.: .....	.....	Abl. sing.: .....	.....
Nom. pl.: .....	.....	Gen. pl.: .....	.....
Dat. sing.: .....	.....	Acc. sing.: .....	.....
Abl. pl.: .....	.....	Gen. sing.: .....	.....

d/ What are the optional endings for dea, -ae in Dat./Abl. plural and why?

Optional endings: .....

Reason: .....

e/ Write the different meanings of these words in singular and plural:

▷ littera, -ae

▷ copia, -ae

▷ vigilia, -ae

Singular: .....

Singular: .....

Singular: .....

Plural: .....

Plural: .....

Plural: .....

f/ The words nuptiae, insidiae and divitiae have a common characteristic. What is it?

.....

g/ Translate these common nouns into English:

ianua	.....	causa	.....	insula	.....
-------	-------	-------	-------	--------	-------

mensa	.....	amicitia	.....	patria	.....
-------	-------	----------	-------	--------	-------

aqua	.....	puella	.....	dea	.....
------	-------	--------	-------	-----	-------

magistra	.....	agricola	.....	ancilla	.....
----------	-------	----------	-------	---------	-------

pecunia	.....	ira	.....	agricola	.....
---------	-------	-----	-------	----------	-------

terra	.....	via	.....	hasta	.....
-------	-------	-----	-------	-------	-------

filia	.....	regina	.....	mora	.....
-------	-------	--------	-------	------	-------

cena	.....	poena	.....	nauta	.....
------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

## 2. 2<sup>nd</sup> declension

[9]

a) First sub-variant: -us, -i

1/ Write the endings without looking them up:

	singular	plural
Nom.	-	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

2/ Decline the nouns modus, -i and nuntius, -i: ◊ Mind the Voc. sing.!

	singular	plural	singular	plural
Nom.	- modus	-	- nuntius	-
Voc.	-	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-	-
Abl.	-	-	-	-

3/ Write side by side the nouns equus, -i and terra, -ae in the requested cases:

Acc. pl.: ..... Abl. sing.: .....

Nom. pl.: ..... Gen. pl.: .....

Dat. sing.: ..... Acc. sing.: .....

Abl. pl.: ..... Gen. sing.: .....

4/ What are the very common alternative forms for *dii*, *deorum* and *diis*?

*dii* ⇒ .....      *deorum* ⇒ .....      *diis* ⇒ .....

5/ Why does *locus, -i* have both *loci* and *loca* as its Nom. pl.?

.....  
.....

6/ Translate these common nouns into English:

<i>gladius</i>	.....	<i>cibus</i>	.....	<i>deus</i>	.....
<i>filius</i>	.....	<i>annus</i>	.....	<i>servus</i>	.....
<i>populus</i>	.....	<i>amicus</i>	.....	<i>ludus</i>	.....
<i>vulcus</i>	.....	<i>murus</i>	.....	<i>equus</i>	.....
<i>dominus</i>	.....	<i>discipulus</i>	.....	<i>morbus</i>	.....

7/ Decline the group adjective-noun *bonus nauta*:

	singular	plural
Nom.	- <i>bonus nauta</i>	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

**b) Second sub-variant: -∅, -i**

1/ Write the endings without looking them up:

	singular	plural
Nom.	-	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

2/ Decline the nouns ager, agri and liber, -bri:

	singular	plural	singular	plural
Nom.	- ager	-	- liber	-
Voc.	-	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-	-
Abl.	-	-	-	-

3/ Write the nouns magister, -tri and vir, -i in the requested cases:

- |                   |       |                   |       |
|-------------------|-------|-------------------|-------|
| Acc. pl.: .....   | ..... | Abl. sing.: ..... | ..... |
| Nom. pl.: .....   | ..... | Gen. pl.: .....   | ..... |
| Dat. sing.: ..... | ..... | Acc. sing.: ..... | ..... |
| Abl. pl.: .....   | ..... | Gen. sing.: ..... | ..... |

4/ Decline the group adjective-noun *altus puer*:

	singular	plural
Nom.	- <i>altus puer</i>	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

c) Third sub-variant: -um, -i

1/ Write the endings owithout looking them up and decline the noun *oppidum, -i*:

	singular	plural		singular	plural
Nom.	-	-	Nom.	- <i>oppidum</i>	-
Voc.	-	-	Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-	Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-	Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-	Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-	Abl.	-	-

2/ Write the nouns *donum, -i* and *nauta, -ae* in the requested cases:

Acc. pl.: .....

Abl. sing.: .....

Nom. pl.: .....

Gen. pl.: .....

Dat. sing.: .....

Acc. sing.: .....

Abl. pl.: .....

Gen. sing.: .....

## 3/ Write the different meanings of these words in singular and plural:

▷ auxilium, -i

Singular: .....

Plural: .....

▷ castrum, -i

Singular: .....

Plural: .....

▷ impedimentum, -i

Singular: .....

Plural: .....

## 4/ Translate these common nouns into English:

exitium .....	auxilium .....	bellum .....
praemium .....	proelium .....	odium .....
officium .....	oppidum .....	periculum .....
caelum .....	factum .....	praemium .....

## 5/ Decline the group adjective-noun magnum praemium:

	singular	plural
Nom.	- magnum praemium	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

General exercises for the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> declensions

[10]

## 1/ Identify the case and number in which these words are (for some words, more than one answer is possible):

invidiam .....	dona .....	somnus .....	officia .....
vulgum .....	templum .....	vir .....	magistrae .....
poetas .....	gladii .....	filium .....	iudicio .....
annis .....	scientia .....	cenarum .....	muros .....

verba .....	servi .....	dominis .....	puer .....
morae .....	hastas .....	oculos .....	ianuis .....

**2/ Put these words into the requested case:**

proelium: acc. sing.	.....	insula: nom. pl.	.....
equus: gen. pl.	.....	scientia: dat. sing.	.....
amica: dat. pl.	.....	filius: acc. pl.	.....
magister: abl. sing.	.....	nuntius: gen. sing.	.....
verbum: acc. pl.	.....		

**3/ Read these sentences and pay attention to the usage of cases:**

- Puellae magister hastas habebat.
- Oppidi turba pecuniam quaeret.
- Necaverunt dominum gladio.
- Cibum non habet agricolae filius.

**4/ Translate into Latin:**

- The teachers write books for the boys.
- .....

- I always leave the rewards in the temple of the goddess.
- .....

- The sailors see the destruction of the town.
- .....

- The inhabitants of the island carry the swords into the temple.
- .....

### 3. 3<sup>rd</sup> declension

[11]

#### a) Consonant stems

1/ Write the endings without looking them up:

<i>masc./fem.</i>	singular	plural	<i>neuter</i>	singular	plural
Nom.	-	-	Nom.	-	-
Voc.	-	-	Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-	Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-	Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-	Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-	Abl.	-	-

2/ Decline the nouns *ratio, -onis* (f.) and *litus, -oris* (n.):

	singular	plural	singular	plural
Nom.	- ratio	-	- litus	-
Voc.	-	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-	-
Abl.	-	-	-	-

3/ Write the nouns *laus, laudis* (f.) and *flumen, -inis* (n.) in the requested cases:

Acc. pl.: ..... Abl. sing.: .....

Nom. pl.: ..... Gen. pl.: .....

Dat. sing.: ..... Acc. sing.: .....

Abl. pl.: ..... Gen. sing.: .....

4/ Write the nouns *comes, -itis* (m.) and *servus, -i* in the requested cases:

Acc. pl.: .....	.....	Abl. sing.: .....	.....
Nom. pl.: .....	.....	Gen. pl.: .....	.....
Dat. sing.: .....	.....	Acc. sing.: .....	.....
Abl. pl.: .....	.....	Gen. sing.: .....	.....

5/ Translate these common nouns into English:

<i>salus, -utis</i>	.....	<i>opus, operis</i>	.....	<i>veritas, -atis</i>	.....
<i>caput, -itis</i>	.....	<i>rex, regis</i>	.....	<i>arbor, -oris</i>	.....
<i>mos, moris</i>	.....	<i>comes, -itis</i>	.....	<i>dux, ducis</i>	.....
<i>vulnus, -eris</i>	.....	<i>flumen, -minis</i>	.....	<i>mulier, -eris</i>	.....
<i>plebs, plebis</i>	.....	<i>miles, -itis</i>	.....	<i>tempus, -oris</i>	.....
<i>homo, -minis</i>	.....	<i>iter, itineris</i>	.....	<i>labor, -oris</i>	.....
<i>corpus, -oris</i>	.....	<i>pax, pacis</i>	.....	<i>scelus, -eleris</i>	.....
<i>civitas, -atis</i>	.....	<i>custos, -odis</i>	.....	<i>aetas, -atis</i>	.....
<i>soror, -oris</i>	.....	<i>uxor, -oris</i>	.....	<i>litus, -oris</i>	.....

▷ Among these nouns, there are some neuter ones. Can you identify them? Underline them.

6/ Decline the group adjective-noun *doctus rex*:

	singular	plural
Nom.	- <i>doctus rex</i>	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

## b) -i stems

1/ Write the endings without looking them up:

<i>masc./fem.</i>	singular	plural	<i>neuter</i>	singular	plural
Nom.	-	-	Nom.	-	-
Voc.	-	-	Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-	Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-	Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-	Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-	Abl.	-	-

2/ Decline the nouns *navis, -is* (f.) and *rete, -is* (n.):

	singular	plural	singular	plural
Nom.	- <i>navis</i>	-	- <i>rete</i>	-
Voc.	-	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-	-
Abl.	-	-	-	-

3/ Write the nouns *mare, -is* (n.) and *donum, -i* in the requested cases:

Acc. pl.:	.....	.....	Abl. sing.:	.....	.....
Nom. pl.:	.....	.....	Gen. pl.:	.....	.....
Dat. sing.:	.....	.....	Acc. sing.:	.....	.....
Abl. pl.:	.....	.....	Gen. sing.:	.....	.....

4/ Translate these common nouns into English:

<i>caedes, -is</i>	.....	<i>civis, -is</i>	.....	<i>navis, -is</i>	.....
<i>ignis, -is</i>	.....	<i>classis, -is</i>	.....	<i>vallis, -is</i>	.....

5/ Decline the group adjective-noun magna classis:

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
Nom.	- magna classis	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

c) Consonant stem or -i stem?

1/ Some of these nouns are -i stem and some others are consonant stem; can you translate them and say which ones are which?

animal, -alis	.....	urbs, urbis	.....
senex, -is	.....	nox, noctis	.....
pater, -tris	.....	frater, -tris	.....
pars, partis	.....	mors, mortis	.....
mater, -tris	.....		

2/ Decline the group adjective-noun saevum animal:

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>
Nom.	- saevum animal	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

### d) Further observations

1/ What are the Acc. sing. for turris and Tiberis?

turris ⇒ ..... Tiberis ⇒ .....

2/ The declined forms of the two nouns vir (2<sup>nd</sup> decl.) and vis (3<sup>rd</sup> decl.) are easily confused; can you tell which noun belongs to each of these forms?

vires	.....	viribus	.....	virium	.....
viri	.....	virum	.....	vim	.....
virorum	.....	viris	.....	viro	.....

3/ Identify the use of either vir or vis in this sentence:

- Atheniensium classis trecentis navibus vi ac multitudine invasit (Cicero, *In Verrem*). ....

4/ Write the different meanings of these words in singular and plural:

▷ aedis, -is	▷ finis, -is	▷ ops, opis	▷ sors, sortis
Singular: .....	Singular: .....	Singular: .....	Singular: .....
Plural: .....	Plural: .....	Plural: .....	Plural: .....

### General exercises for the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension

[12]

1/ For each word, write the dictionary-entry form (Nom./Gen. singular) and identify the case and number in which the word is:

itineris	.....	vim	.....	.....
pectora	.....	aedes	.....	.....
homini	.....	matri	.....	.....
dignitas	.....	nocte	.....	.....
navium	.....	animalia	.....	.....
flumina	.....	caedem	.....	.....
urbium	.....	dolori	.....	.....
mentes	.....	aestate	.....	.....

pacem ..... .....

capita ..... .....

montibus ..... .....

moenia ..... .....

**2/ Put these words into the requested case (you should know their genitives):**

tempus: acc. sing. ....

uxor: acc. pl. ....

canis: acc. pl. ....

genus: nom. pl. ....

miles: abl. pl. ....

pars: gen. sing. ....

civis: dat. pl. ....

dux: dat. sing. ....

mons: abl. sing. ....

salus: gen. pl. ....

custos: nom. pl. ....

mare: dat. sing. ....

**3/ Read these sentences and underline the 3<sup>rd</sup> declension nouns:**

- Custodes pacem civibus volebant.
- Puellae orationem consulis non audiverunt.
- In itinere ad ludum milites civitatis vidimus.
- Scelera consules nautae videre nolunt.

**4/ Translate into Latin:**

- The guards of the queen will tell you the name of the citadel.

.....

- The judges threw the bodies of the soldiers into the river.

.....

- The author writes songs about love for the master's daughter.

.....

- The emperor guides the troops towards the sea.

.....

## 4. 4<sup>th</sup> declension

[13]

### a) First sub-variant: -us, -us

1/ Write the endings without looking them up and decline the noun exercitus, -us:

	singular	plural		singular	plural
Nom.	-	-	Nom.	- exercitus	-
Voc.	-	-	Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-	Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-	Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-	Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-	Abl.	-	-

2/ Write the nouns metus, -us and ludus, -i in the requested cases:

Acc. pl.: .....	.....	Abl. sing.: .....	.....
Nom. pl.: .....	.....	Gen. pl.: .....	.....
Dat. sing.: .....	.....	Acc. sing.: .....	.....
Abl. pl.: .....	.....	Gen. sing.: .....	.....

3/ Write all the possible forms of domus, -us:

	singular	plural
Nom.	- domus	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

4/ Some of these words belong to the 2<sup>nd</sup> declension, and some to the 4<sup>th</sup>. Can you differentiate them and translate them?

gladius	.....	ludus	.....	fructus	.....
metus	.....	vultus	.....	modus	.....
sensus	.....	somnus	.....	murus	.....
manus	.....	cursus	.....		

5/ Decline the group adjective-noun bonus sensus:

	singular	plural
Nom.	- bonus sensus	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

b) Second sub-variant: -u, -us

1/ Write the endings without looking them up and decline the noun cornu, -us:

	singular	plural		singular	plural
Nom.	-	-	Nom.	- cornu	-
Voc.	-	-	Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-	Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-	Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-	Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-	Abl.	-	-

2/ Write the nouns *genu, -us* and *templum, -i* in the requested cases:

Acc. pl.:	.....	Abl. sing.:	.....
Nom. pl.:	.....	Gen. pl.:	.....
Dat. sing.:	.....	Acc. sing.:	.....
Abl. pl.:	.....	Gen. sing.:	.....

3/ Decline the group adjective-noun *dextrum cornu*:

	singular	plural
Nom.	- dextrum cornu	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

## 5. 5<sup>th</sup> declension

[14]

a/ Write the endings without looking them up and decline the noun *fides, -ei*:

	singular	plural		singular	plural
Nom.	-	-	Nom.	- fides	-
Voc.	-	-	Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-	Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-	Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-	Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-	Abl.	-	-

b/ Write the nouns *res, -ei* and *labor, -oris* (m.) in the requested cases:

Acc. pl.: .....	.....	Abl. sing.: .....	.....
Nom. pl.: .....	.....	Gen. pl.: .....	.....
Dat. sing.: .....	.....	Acc. sing.: .....	.....
Abl. pl.: .....	.....	Gen. sing.: .....	.....

c/ What is the only noun of this declension that can be both masculine and feminine? .....

d/ Decline the adjective-noun group *res publica*:

	singular	plural
Nom.	- <i>res publica</i>	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

### Exercises for all declensions

[15]

1/ Say to what declension each noun belongs and fill out the tables according to the model below:

given noun	decl.	Dat. pl.	Acc. pl.	Nom. pl.	Gen. pl.
		Abl. sing.	Gen. sing.	Acc. sing.	Dat. sing.

<i>exercitus, -us</i>					

<i>dies, -ei</i>					

<i>animal, -alis</i>					

<i>navis, -is</i>				
<i>puer, -i</i>				
<i>sagitta, -ae</i>				

**2/ Choose the right answer:**

- The dative singular of **dux** is      **a/ duci**      **b/ ducis**      **c/ duco**  
 The nominative plural of **cornu** is      **a/ cornuus**      **b/ cornus**      **c/ cornua**  
 The genitive plural of **mater** is      **a/ matrum**      **b/ matrium**      **c/ matrorum**  
 The accusative singular of **magister** is      **a/ magistrem**      **b/ magistrum**      **c/ magistram**  
 The ablative singular of **mare** is      **a/ mare**      **b/ mari**      **c/ maro**

**3/ Say to what declension each noun belongs, and change from singular to plural and vice-versa, keeping the same case (there may be more than one option):**

- |                      |                      |                       |
|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>genua</b> .....   | <b>senatum</b> ..... | <b>legibus</b> .....  |
| <b>fide</b> .....    | <b>nautae</b> .....  | <b>oratores</b> ..... |
| <b>dominos</b> ..... | <b>dona</b> .....    | <b>laudem</b> .....   |

**4/ Choose the right answer:**

- |                  |    |                       |                       |                       |
|------------------|----|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Magistri</b>  | is | <b>a/ Gen. sing.</b>  | <b>b/ Voc. sing.</b>  | <b>c/ Acc. plural</b> |
| <b>Stellarum</b> | is | <b>a/ Acc. sing.</b>  | <b>b/ Acc. plural</b> | <b>c/ Gen. plural</b> |
| <b>Templo</b>    | is | <b>a/ Dat. sing.</b>  | <b>b/ Abl. plural</b> | <b>c/ Gen. sing.</b>  |
| <b>Navibus</b>   | is | <b>a/ Gen. plural</b> | <b>b/ Nom. sing.</b>  | <b>c/ Abl. plural</b> |
| <b>Gentis</b>    | is | <b>a/ Dat. plural</b> | <b>b/ Voc. plural</b> | <b>c/ Gen. sing.</b>  |
| <b>Agricolas</b> | is | <b>a/ Nom. sing.</b>  | <b>b/ Acc. plural</b> | <b>c/ Nom. plural</b> |
| <b>Pueris</b>    | is | <b>a/ Gen sing.</b>   | <b>b/ Dat. sing.</b>  | <b>c/ Dat. plural</b> |

5/ In each group of four words there is a form that does not exist; can you identify it?

tempus / tempora / temporium / tempore

capite / capitum / capita / capitibus

hastam / hastis / hastorum / hastae

pectores / pectorum / pectoribus / pectoris

puerum / pueri / puerorum / puerus

mari / maries / marium / maribus

pacis / pacem / paxes / pax

die / dierum / diis / diei

6/ Do the same as in the former exercise, but with words of different declensions:

fructu / domines / sagittis / deum

aedum / finem / nubes / cive

aestatum / laudium / tempora / plebi

rebus / vires / itinera / gentum

regae / uxorum / puerorum / puellis

vim / navem / caedis / auxilius

praemia / odio / magistrum / lege

caelus / castris / tela / noctium

7/ Choose the right option so that the sentence makes sense:

- Ubi Caesar venit, [metus / metum / metui] atque maeror civitatem invaserunt.
- In eo [colli / collo / colle] consedit.
- Dimidia pars [exercitus / exerciti / exercitu] in Gallia manebat.
- Hic maiorem partem [dies / dii / diei] sedere solebat.
- Mors honesta saepe [vitae / vita / vitam] turpem exornat.

◇

- Omnium [civitatum / civitatum / civitati] totius Siciliae legationes adsunt.
- Milites magnitudine [itineri / itineris / itinerae] fessi erant.
- Igitur utriusque consilio [diem / die / dies] insidiis statuitur.
- Egressere aliquando ex [urbi / urbe / urbes], Catilina.
- Propter latitudinem [fossi / fossae / fossium] muriique altitudinem expugnare non potuit.

**8/ Put the word in brackets in the necessary case so that the sentence makes sense:**

- Interim paucis post ..... [dies] audit Caesarem venire.
- His cognitis rebus, ..... [res] frumentarium providet, ..... [castra] idoneum locum deligit.
- Hoc fere est in mediis Eburonum ..... [finis].
- ..... [miles] pars incolumis in castra pervenit.
- Erat ea ..... [tempestas] Romae Numida quidam, qui ...

◊

- Equites saepe ex equis desiliunt ac ..... [pes] proeliantur.
- In extremo ponte ..... [turris] constituit.
- In illis ..... [aedis] habitat Amphitruo.
- Vos videbatis ante ostium Tiberinum ..... [classis] hostium.
- Oppidum expugnaverunt omnibus ..... [vis].
- Dux haec omnibus ..... [vir] dixit.

**9/ Answer these questions:**

▷ What declension has two possible endings for the dative singular?

The ..... declension, and the two possible endings are ..... and .....

▷ What declension can have -is as Acc. pl.?

The ..... declension.

### c) Adjectives

#### 1. 1<sup>st</sup> class of adjectives

[16]

a/ Translate these common adjectives into English:

multus	.....	liber	.....	gratus	.....
laetus	.....	plenus	.....	infirmitus	.....
doctus	.....	pulcher	.....	iratus	.....
adversus	.....	salvus	.....	beatus	.....
clarus	.....	superbus	.....	carus	.....
aequus	.....	tutus	.....	magnus	.....
bonus	.....	miser	.....	parvus	.....
cupidus	.....	verus	.....	novus	.....

b/ Decline the adjective-noun groups miser poeta and mala ratio:

	singular	plural	singular	plural
Nom.	- miser poeta	-	- mala ratio	-
Voc.	-	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-	-
Abl.	-	-	-	-

c/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the word each adjective (in italics) qualifies:

- Haec enim causa *nova* est (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Quem qui *beatum* fuisse putant, *miseri* ipsi sunt (Cicero, *Philippicae*).

- Omnia possessiones erant *incertae* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).

- *Carus* fuit Africano noster Ennius (Cicero, *Pro Archia*).

◊

- *Longum* est iter et non *tutum* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

- Octavi, *clari* viri et *magni*, statuam videmus in rostris (Cicero, *Philippicae*).

- Nihil feci *iratus*, nihil multo ante meditatum (Cicero, *De Haruspicum Responso*).

- Erat illo tempore *infirma* valetudine Habitus (Cicero, *Pro Cluentio*).

d/ Write the English adjective in Latin in the necessary declension, number and case:

- [MUCH] ..... pecuniam habetis?

- Semper mihi [TRUE] ..... verba dicis.

- In [big] ..... proelio [MANY] ..... milites necavi.

- [GOOD] ..... consulem [SMALL] ..... civitatis videre volo.

- [BAD] ..... mores non amo.

- [FAMOUS] ..... sacerdoti pecuniam offero.

◊

- [PLEASING] ..... libros [HAPPY] ..... scriptorum lego.

- [LONG] ..... iter facere debemus.

- Mare [FULL] ..... nautarum est.

- Heri [ANCIENT] ..... carmen legi.

- Cum [ANGRY] ..... hominibus ludere non debes.

## 2. 2<sup>nd</sup> class of adjectives

[17]

### a) Adjectives of two nominatives

1/ Decline the adjective-noun groups *fidelis nauta* and *utile donum*:

	singular	plural	singular	plural
Nom.	- <i>fidelis nauta</i>	-	- <i>utile donum</i>	-
Voc.	-	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-	-
Abl.	-	-	-	-

2/ Translate these common adjectives into English:

gravis	.....	dissimilis	.....	similis	.....
nobilis	.....	turpis	.....	mirabilis	.....
omnis	.....	dulcis	.....	brevis	.....
levis	.....	facilis	.....	talis	.....

3/ Write the adjective in the necessary number and case:

- Vitae [BRIEF] ..... est cursus.
  - De hoc [FAITHFUL] ..... populo multa scio.
  - Non est [AMAZING] ..... Caesarem semper vincere.
  - Semper tibi [EVERYTHING] ..... dicere debo?
- ◇
- [SWEET] ..... et decorum est pro patria mori (Horatius, *Carmina*).
  - [DIFFICULT (MATTERS)] ..... temptare debemus.
  - [NOBLE] ..... duce necato, milites in fugam se dederunt.
  - [CRUEL] ..... ducum est captos necare.

4/ Read each sentence paying attention to the word each adjective qualifies:

- Haec *omnia* Quintus agebat (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- T. Aufidius volebat esse *similis* horum (Cicero, *Brutus*).
- *Faciles* sunt preces apud eos qui ... (Cicero, *De Haruspicum Responso*).
- A te accepi epistulas, unam *brevem* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- Non vos quidem *crudelis* fuistis? (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Mors *honesta* saepe vitam quoque *turpem* exornat (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

5/ Translate into Latin (adjectives have been written in italics):

- Three *sad* boys were standing by the door.
- .....

- I have already done *everything*.
- .....

- That news was really *sad*.
- .....

- I will send you a *brief* letter.
- .....

- The weapons of the soldiers were not *light*.
- .....

## b) Adjectives of three nominatives

1/ Decline *acer vir* and *acris dea* in singular:

	singular	singular
Nom.	- <i>acer vis</i>	- <i>acris dea</i>
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

2/ Read each sentence, paying attention to the word each adjective (in italics) qualifies:

- Haec res *celerem* et *facilem* exitum habuerunt.
- Medicus ei remedia *celeria* et *facilia* proposuit.
- Post *acrem* hiemem milites oppidum oppugnaverunt.
- *Acri* animo Caesar urbem defendit.
- M. Cato, Galbae gravis atque *acer* inimicus, ... (Cicero, *De Oratore*).
- *Acria* sunt omnia nimis austera (Celsus, *De Medicina*).
- *Celeri* gradu eunt uterque (Plautus, *Trinummus*).

3/ Translate into Latin (adjectives have been written in italics):

- We lost in a *crue*/battle.
- .....

- Those boys were *really* swift.
- .....

- We gave all the weapons to our *cruel*/general.
- .....

- They arrived in *swift* chariots.
- .....

### c) Adjectives of one nominative

1/ Match the adjectives to their English equivalents:

POWERFUL / WISE / POOR / BOLD / FIERCE / HUGE / SAFE AND SOUND / OLD / SUPPLIANT / RICH / LIER / POOR

audax	.....	potens	.....	pauper	.....
ferox	.....	sapiens	.....	sospes	.....
ingens	.....	dives	.....	supplex	.....
mendax	.....	inops	.....	vetus	.....

2/ Say which of these adjectives follow the consonant declension and which ones follow the -i declension:

audax ..... supplex ..... dives ..... vetus ..... sospes ..... ferox .....  
imprudens ..... sapiens ..... pauper ..... princeps ..... potens ..... mendax .....  
memor .....

3/ Decline the adjective-noun group *diligens magister*:

	singular	plural
Nom.	-	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

4/ Read each sentence, paying attention to the word each adjective (in italics) qualifies:

- *Sapientis* magistri est discipulos facta Romanorum docere.
  - Et *pauperes* et *divites* moriuntur.
  - *Superstitibus* quae habebamus dedimus.
  - Noli credere *mendaci* amico.
  - *Velocia* et *ferocia* animalia capere non potui.
  - Cum rege *potenti* contra Gallos pugnaverunt.
- ◇
- Si volumus esse *sapientes*, oportet nos Latine loqui.
  - Scio hunc puerum *diligentem* esse.
  - Viderunt enim ex *mendicis* fieri repente *divites* (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
  - Hagesaretus Larisaeus *memor* et *gratus* fuit meque postea diligentissime coluit (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

- Non solum ex urbe verum etiam ex agris *ingentem* numerum perditorum hominum conlegerat (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).
- *Sospites omnes* Romam ad *propinquos* restituit (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

**5/ Translate into Latin (adjectives have been written in italics):**

- With a *powerful/army* you will be able to conquer the city.
- .....

- Are there any *bold* citizens in this *huge* city?
- .....

- I want you to return *safe and sound*.
- .....

- You must give money to *poor* people.
- .....

- Give this letter to the *chieftains*.
- .....

### 3. Position of the adjective

[18]

**a/ Read these sentences paying attention to the position of the adjective with respect to the noun it qualifies:**

- *In hoc medio cursu* est insula quae appellatur Mona (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Ex medio itinere* proiectis sarcinis refugiebant (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- *Hoc fere est in mediis Eburonum finibus* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Milites legionum duarum *in summo colle* ab hostibus conspiciebantur (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Ex iniquo progressi loco *in summo [loco]* constiterant (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

**b/ Translate into Latin:**

- The soldiers are now *in the middle of the mountain*.
- .....

- And now they are *on the top of the mountain*.
- .....

- They were drowning *in the middle of the waves*.
- 

#### 4. Use of the adjective as a noun

[19]

a/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the meaning of the adjectives:

- Arioistus ad postulata Caesaris *pauca* respondit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Dum *certa et pauca et magna* dicam breviter, attendite (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Omnes *boni* omnium generum atque ordinum suam salutem cum mea coniungunt (Cicero, *Pro Sulla*).
- Dicam ego de omni statu P. Sesti, de genere vitae, de incredibili amore in *bonos* (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*).
- Non modo hoc patrum voluntate *liberi* faciunt sed ... (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- P. Quincti consobrinam habet in matrimonio Naevius et ex ea *liberos* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

b/ Translate into Latin using only an adjective in each sentence for each group of words in italics:

- I hate *bad people*.
- 

- In that city I saw many *beautiful things*.
- 

- *Good people* will never do *bad things*.
- 

- I have already done *everything*.
- 

- The consul had five *children*.
-

## d) Numeral adjectives

### 1. Cardinals

[20]

a/ Decline duo, duae, duo and tres, tria:

	masc.	fem.	neuter	masc. / fem.	neuter
Nom.	- duo	-	-	- tres	-
Voc.	-	-	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-	-	-
Abl.	-	-	-	-	-

b/ Write these numbers in Latin words:

1	.....	9	.....	80	.....
2	.....	10	.....	90	.....
3	.....	20	.....	100	.....
4	.....	30	.....	200	.....
5	.....	40	.....	500	.....
6	.....	50	.....	1000	.....
7	.....	60	.....	2000	.....
8	.....	70	.....	10000	.....

c/ Now write these compound numerals in Latin words:

85	.....	24	.....	93	.....
37	.....	56	.....	48	.....

d/ What is the difference between *mille* and *milia*?

.....  
.....

e/ Decline *mille libri* and *tria milia civium*:

Nom.	- <i>mille libri</i>	- <i>tria milia civium</i>
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

f/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the numerals:

- *Mille* milites reliquit in oppido.
- *Undeviginti* annos natus erat eo tempore (Cicero, *Brutus*).
- Eodem tempore *duobus* praeterea locis pugnatum est (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- *Mille* aut *duo milia* occidit in proelio.
- Ipse in Italiā magnis itineribus contendit *duasque* ibi legiones conscribit et *tres* ex hibernis educit et cum his *quinque* legionibus ire contendit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Numerus captivorum fuit *sex milium*.

g/ Read and complete these sentences by writing the given numbers in words; the number makes reference to the word in italics:

- Cotidie in forum [1,000] ..... *homines* veniunt.
- Leontinus Gorgias [107] ..... complevit *annos* (Cicero, *Cato Maior de Senectute*).
- ... cum ego, [65] ..... *annos* natus, ... (Cicero, *Cato Maior de Senectute*).

- Urbs [3,000] ..... *pasuum abest.*
- Cum *legionibus* [3] ..... e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Ex eo proelio circiter [thousands] ..... *hominum superfuerunt.*

◊

- Patria gens Claudia procedente tempore [28] ..... *consulatus, dictaturas* [5] ..... , *censuras* [7] ..... , *triumphos* [6] ..... , [2] ..... *ovationes* adepta est (Suetonius, *De Vita Caesarum*).
- [(To) 2,000] ..... *civium panem dare debemus.*
- Fluminis erat altitudo *pedum* circiter [3] ..... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Non enim amplius *pedum* [2,000] ..... a castris castra distabant (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*)
- In his erant *legionariorum* [3,000] ..... (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Spatium erat circiter [5,000] ..... *passuum.*

h/ Translate into Latin:

- I have seen *two* boys and *three* girls.

.....

- I gave *fourteen* books to three students.

.....

- In two cities I saw *three* temples.

.....

- Will you give me *one thousand* books?

.....

- With *three thousand* soldiers, conquering the city is easy.

.....

- The temple is *one thousand* steps away.

.....

- *Five thousand* citizens ran towards the forum.

.....

## 2. Ordinals

[21]

a/ Make these ordinals feminine:

1 <sup>st</sup>	.....	4 <sup>th</sup>	.....	7 <sup>th</sup>	.....	10 <sup>th</sup>	.....
2 <sup>nd</sup>	.....	5 <sup>th</sup>	.....	8 <sup>th</sup>	.....		
3 <sup>rd</sup>	.....	6 <sup>th</sup>	.....	9 <sup>th</sup>	.....		

b/ Read the sentences and write the ordinal number in Latin (they must agree with the word in italics):

- Ante *diem* [15<sup>th</sup>] ..... kalendas Octobres, ludorum Romanorum [2<sup>nd</sup>] ..... *die*, ... (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- Venire *hora* [9<sup>th</sup>] ..... iubet (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Nescis heri [4<sup>th</sup>] ..... in circo *diem* ludorum Romanorum fuisse? (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Aliquot saeculis post P. Scipio *bello Punico* [3<sup>rd</sup>] ..... Carthaginem cepit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Qui autem quiescant, ut [7<sup>th</sup>] ..... , ut [8<sup>th</sup>] ..... *legio*, in magna gloria et laude ponendos [esse] puto (Cicero, *Philippicae*).

## 3. Multiplicatives

[22]

a/ Read these sentences paying attention to the numerals in italics:

- Nunc in metu sum maximo, *triplici* modo (Plautus, *Pseudolus*).
- Motus autem animorum *duplices* sunt (Cicero, *De Officiis*).
- Hoc *triplex* rerum publicarum genus videtur mihi commune nobis cum illis populis fuisse (Cicero, *De Republica*).
- Animadvertisco natura *quadruplicem esse* formam (Terentius Varro, *De Lingua Latina*).

b/ Write the English numeral given in brackets in Latin; if there is a word in italics, the numeral is related to it:

- [DOUBLE] ..... habuit docendi *viam* (Cicero, *Orator*).
- Castris idoneum locum delegit *acieque* [TRIPLE] ..... instructa ad eum locum venit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Me in patriam [THRICE] ..... suis decretis Italia cuncta revocavit (Cicero, *Post Reditum ad Populum*).

- [ONCE] ..... *ait se in vita pertimusse* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Non [ONCE] ..... sed [TWICE] ..... *frumentum vendidisti* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

#### 4. Distributives

[23]

Read and write the distributive number in Latin (it must agree with the word in italics):

- Per [2] ..... *tabellarios* misi Romam publice litteras (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- *Gladiatores* Pompeius distribuit [2] ..... *singulis patribus familiarum* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- Inter [2] ..... *castra* Pompei atque Caesaris unum flumen tantum intererat Apsus (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Ipse legionem unam in [3] ..... *castra* distribuit (Hirtius, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Octavius [5] ..... *castris* oppidum circumdedit (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

## e) Comparative and superlative

**1. (unapplied in this book)**

### 2. Accidence

[24]

a/ Form the comparative and superlative of these adjectives, keeping the same case, gender and number:

<i>positive</i>	<i>comparative</i>	<i>superlative</i>
facilem	-	-
sapiens	-	-
alorum	-	-
fortibus	-	-
felices	-	-

b/ Translate these adjectives and form their comparative and superlative:

<i>meaning</i>	<i>positive</i>	<i>comparative</i>	<i>superlative</i>
good	- bonus	-	-
bad	-	-	-
small	-	-	-
big	-	-	-
old	-	-	-
rich	-	-	-
similar	-	-	-
easy	-	-	-

c/ Decline the comparative of *multus, -a, -um* in singular and plural:

	singular	plural
Nom.	-	-
Voc.	-	-
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

### 3. Syntax

[25]

#### a) Comparative

1/ Replace the *quam* construction with the construction with the ablative case:

- *Hic liber melior est quam ille.*
- .....

- *Mea soror altior est quam tu.*
- .....

- *In hoc exercitu milites sunt audacieores quam duces.*
- .....

- *Domum meliorem habeo quam tuam.*
- .....

2/ Read these sentences:

- *Nihil est otiosa senectute iucundius* (Cicero, *De Senectute*).
- *Sua virtute in altiore locum pervenit* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Videte nunc quam versa et mutata in peiorem partem sint omnia* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Utram igitur putas legem molliorem?* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Omnia superioris noctis consilia ad me perlata esse sentiunt* (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).

3/ Choose the necessary comparative from the list below and make it agree with the underlined word:

*superior / robustior / facilior / occultior / gravior*

- Sed haec quae [stronger] ..... improbitatis sunt, omittamus (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Nullae sunt [more hidden] ..... insidiae quam eae quae latent in simulatione offici (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Reliquos perterritos in fugam coniciunt ac ne in locis quidem [higher] ..... consistere patiuntur (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Caesar, ne [worse] ..... bello occurreret, ad exercitum proficiscitur (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Consuetudo enim laborum perpessionem dolorum efficit [easier] ..... (Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes*).

4/ Complete these sentences using the comparative of multus:

*plura / plura / plures / plures / pluribus / pluribus / plurium*

- Pompeius [eum] loqui [more things] ..... prohibuit (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Cruorem in locis [more] ....., deiectum aedificium se vidisse dicunt (Cicero, *Pro Tullio*).
- Proximi cornibus constiterant regii equites, et, mixtum genus, delecta [of several] ..... gentium auxilia (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- Priusquam [more] ..... senatores conspirarent, orationem habuit.
- Hic ego de te [more things] ..... non dicam (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*).
- Sed ineptum est de tam perspicua eius impudentia [with more] ..... verbis disputare (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Alexandrini [more] ..... ex navibus egrediebantur nostrosque insequebantur (anon., *Bellum Alexandrinum*).

5/ Translate into Latin:

- There is nothing *better* than wisdom.

.....

- That writer writes *better* books than you.

.....

- I have *more* money than you.

.....

- I live in a *smaller* city than you do.
- .....

- People in this city are *richer* than me.
- .....

◊

- I think that nobody is *faster* than Quintus.
- .....

- I have *more* horses than you.
- .....

- Reading is *better* than sleeping.
- .....

- This army is *worse* than Caesar's army.
- .....

- I have a teacher wiser than yours.
- .....

## b) Superlative

1/ Read these sentences:

- Tempus erat autem *difficillimum* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Odium igitur *acerrimum* patris in filium ex hoc, opinor, ostenditur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Clarissimi viri nostrae civitatis temporibus optimis* hoc sibi *amplissimum pulcherrimumque* ducebant (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*).
- Interea caedes *indignissimae maximaque* factae sunt (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Ibi ex fano Apollinis *religiosissimo* noctu clam sustulit signa *pulcherrima atque antiquissima* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

2/ Write the superlative of the given adjectives, in agreement with the underlined word:

- Heri vesperi apud me Hirtius fuit; qua mente esset Antonius demonstravit, [malus] ..... scilicet et [infidelis] ..... (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

- Tu, homo [parvus] ..... consili, Hieronicam legem sustulisti? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Erant transcendendae valles [magnus] ..... ac [difficilis] ..... (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Apud Helvetios longe [nobilis] ..... fuit et [dives] ..... Orgetorix (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

**3/ Translate into Latin:**

- Your brother is the *tallest* of all of us.

.....

- I have the *best* weapons.

.....

- This soldier is the *bravest* of all.

.....

- I gave a prize to the *wisest* student.

.....

- The victories of this army are *very famous*.

.....

- I live in a *very rich* city.

.....

- Caesar led the army to a *very bad* place.

.....

**c) Further observations**

**1/ Comparative of inferiority and of equality**

**a/ Read these sentences:**

- Vibullius non *minus necessarium esse* existimavit de repentino adventu Caesaris Pompeium fieri certioreum (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- ... , si Alienus *minus vehemens* fuerit (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*).
- Quaestores non *minus acres* contra me fuerunt (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Quid *tam est commune quam spiritus vivis, terra mortuis?* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Non *tam propensus ad misericordiam quam applicatus ad severitatem* videbatur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

**b/ Translate into Latin:**

- This city is not *as large* as that one.
- .....

- My house is not *as small* as yours.
- .....

- I live in a city *as famous* as Rome.
- .....

- He died in a fight *as cruel* as a battle.
- .....

**2/ Comparative and superlative by means of adverbs**

**Read these sentences:**

- Non enim possumus omnia per nos agere; alius in alia est re *magis utilis* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Posteaquam liberatus sum, animo coepi multo *magis vacuo ac soluto* nihil aliud nisi de iudicio agere et cogitare (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- ... ne vestra ista praeclara lex agraria *magis popularis* esse videatur (Cicero, *De Lege Agraria*).
- *Maxime necessarium* est (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*).
- Itaque mihi videor, iudices, magnam et *maxime aegram* rei publicae partem suscepisse (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Iste sibi locum *maxime tutum* esse arbitrabatur (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

**3/ A very common use of quam + superlative**

**a/ Read these sentences:**

- *Quam maximis* potest *itineribus* in Galliam ulteriorem contendit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Constituerunt *sementes quam maximas* facere (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Quam plurimas civitates* suo beneficio habere obstrictas volebat (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Quam maturime* occurrentum [esse] putabat (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Quam celerrime* potuit ad Ariovistum contendit.
- Milites legionis decimae, cui *quam maxime* confidebat, ... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

**b/ Translate into Latin:**

- I have come *as quickly as possible*.

.....

- He is *as strong as anybody can be*.

.....

- Cicero read *as many books as possible*.

.....

- I want to live in *the happiest possible* city.

.....

**4/ Singular superlative with quique EACH meaning ALL****a/ Read these sentences:**

- Equos *fortissimo quique bellatori tradit* (Tacitus, *Annales*).
- Duces ac *fortissimus quisque interfecti vulneratique sunt* (anon., *Bellum Africum*).
- *Sapientissimus quisque aequissimo animo moritur, stultissimus iniquissimo* (Cicero, *Cato Maior de Senectute*).
- *Optimo et nobilissimo cuique meam orationem gratissimam esse oportet* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Ego enim ignavissimo cuique maximam fidem habeo* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).

**b/ Translate into Latin using the system of quique + superlative in singular:**

- I gave a prize to *the best students*.

.....

- Caesar built a temple in *the largest cities*.

.....

- I will choose *the fastest runners*.

.....

- *The wisest philosophers* came to Rome yesterday.

.....

## f) Pronouns

### 1. Demonstrative pronouns

[26]

a/ Complete the table for the singular of hic, haec, hoc:

	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neuter</i>
Nom.	- hic	- haec	- hoc
Acc.	-	-	-
Gen.	-	- huius	-
Dat.	-	-	-
Abl.	- hoc	-	- hoc

b/ What is the only irregularity in the plural of hic, haec, hoc?

.....

c/ Put the demonstrative in the requested form or make it agree with the underlined word:

- C. Quinctius fuit P. Quincti [hic] ..... frater (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
  - Dubitabitis exemplum [ille] ..... iudicum sequi? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
  - Heredem testamento reliquit [hic] ..... P. Quinctium (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
  - [Iste] ..... testem produxit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
  - Accusant ei qui [hic] ..... ipsum iugulare summe cupierunt (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- ◊
- Si ego [hic, acc. pl.] ..... bene novi, ... (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
  - Restitue nobis veterem tuam [illa] ..... calliditatem atque prudentiam (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
  - Res vobis exponemus, quo facilius et [hic] ..... hominis innocentissimi miserias et [ille, gen. pl.] ..... audacias cognoscere possitis (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

- Tu, inquam, [illa] ..... faces incendisti (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Non modo non laedetur causa nobilitatis, si [iste] ..... hominibus resistetis, verum etiam ornabitur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

## 2. Personal pronouns

[27]

a/ Decline the pronouns ego, tu and nos:

	- ego	- tu	- nos
Nom.	-	-	-
Voc.	-	-	-
Acc.	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-
Abl.	-	-	-

b/ Translate these sentences into Latin:

- They saw *us* immediately.
- .....

- They gave *us* the book immediately.
- .....

- The senators do not love *him*.
- .....

- The senators told *him* the news.
- .....

c/ Write the given personal pronouns in Latin in the necessary case; the words to which they are related have been underlined to help you:

- Pro [ego] ..... pugnabit L.Philippus (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Plus oneris sustuli quam ferre [ego] ..... posse intellego (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- [Tu] ..... nostra verba audire oportebit (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

- Apud [tu] ..... et hos qui [tu] ..... adsunt veritas valebit (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Abs [tu] ..... , C. Aquili, et a [vos] ..... qui adestis in consilio, queso ut diligenter attendatis (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Maiores nostri ex minima tenuissimaque re publica maximam et florentissimam [nos] ..... reliquerunt (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Vidistis quam cupidus [ego] ..... C. Cestilius, quam studiosus [vos] ..... fuerit (Cicero, *Post Reditum in Senatu*).

### 3. Possessive pronouns

[28]

**a/ Translate into Latin:**

- Pompeius arrived yesterday, and Caesar showed the army to his son. ( $\rightleftarrows$  Pompeius' son)
- .....

- Caesar showed the army to his son. ( $\rightleftarrows$  Caesar's son)
- .....

- Yesterday Marcus saw his mother in the forum. ( $\rightleftarrows$  his own mother)
- .....

- Octavia lives in Rome. Yesterday Marcus saw her mother in the forum.
- .....

**b/ Put the possessive in Latin making it agree with the underlined word:**

- Ipsum templum repreaesentabat memoriam consulatus [meus] ..... (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*).
- Ipse honestissimus inter [suus] ..... numerabatur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Amicum enim [noster] ..... in iudicium vocabas (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Cum fumantis etiam [nostra] ..... navis reliquissent, accedere incipiunt Syracusas (Cicero, *In Verrem*).  
◊
- Te, te inquam, Fanni, ab [tuum] ..... subselliis contra te testem suscitabo (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).
- Ea nos videre nisi in [tuus] ..... amicorumque tuorum tectis non possumus (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Tibi [sua] ..... omnis opes fortunasque commendat (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- In [vestra] ..... cohortem sua sponte pervenerat? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

## 4. Anaphoric pronoun

[29]

a/ Decline the singular of the anaphoric pronoun:

	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neuter</i>
Nom.	- <i>is</i>	- <i>ea</i>	- <i>id</i>
Acc.	-	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-
Dat.	-	-	-
Abl.	-	-	-

b/ Translate into Latin:

- Yesterday I saw *him* and *her*.
- .....

- I gave *him* and *her* five books.
- .....

- They killed *them* in Rome.
- .....

- They gave *them* the weapons.
- .....

- The child was playing with *them*.
- .....

- There is much wisdom in *her*.
- .....

c/ Complete the sentences by writing the necessary form of the anaphoric pronoun:

- Pater vocat me, [him] ..... sequor (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- Numquam [those] ..... copias rex Deiotarus habuit (Cicero, *Pro Rege Deiotaro*).
- Igitur ex improviso finis [of him] ..... cum magna manu invadit (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Quid est quod non liceat [to him] ..... dicere? (Cicero, *De Lege Agraria*).

- Postquam senatus de bello [of them] ..... accepit, ... (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).  
◊
- [Her] ..... iste habere domi suae noluit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Ut ex [them] ..... quaeratur ego postulo (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Chrysogonus et ipse ad [them, masc.] ..... accedit (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Paulo post [her] ..... Cumis vidi (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- At [that] ..... tibi C. Verres fecit iniuriam (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*).
- Cum [to him] ..... natura nihil melius quam vocem dedisset, vocem in quaestum contulit (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

## 5. Identity pronouns

[30]

a/ Decline the singular masculine and feminine of idem, eadem, idem:

	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>
Nom.	- idem	- eadem
Acc.	-	-
Gen.	-	-
Dat.	-	-
Abl.	-	-

b/ Translate into Latin:

- Caesar *himself* gave the swords to the *same* soldiers.
- .....

- I *myself* saw it, but you didn't see it *yourself*.
- .....

- You must read the *same* book twice.
- .....

- They live in the *same* house.
- .....

- I will say this to him *himself*, not to his brother.
- .....

c/ Write the necessary form of *idem*, *eadem*, *idem* or of *ipse*, *ipsa ipsum*:

- [He himself] ..... in *Italianam magnis itineribus contendit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- [The same thing] ..... *facit Caesar* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Mihi videris accusare autem *eos* [themselves] ..... a quibus mercedem accepisti (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- [The same things] ..... *secreto ab aliis quaerit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

◇

- [The same] ..... *itinere*, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- P. Quinctius in Galliam ad *te* [yourself] ..... venit in agrum communem (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Aude id dicere [to those themselves] ..... quos advocasti (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- [The same] ..... *sponcionem de societate fecit* quam Rubrius facere voluerat (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

## 6. Reflexive pronouns

[31]

a/ Translate into Latin:

- He hurt *himself* with his sword.
- .....

- You hurt *yourself* with your sword.
- .....

- She has bought three books for you and two for *herself*.
- .....

- He left that money here for *himself*.
- .....

- Sometimes he speaks to *himself*.
- .....

b/ Write the requested reflexive pronouns of the 3<sup>rd</sup> person in Latin:

- **Ipsa** [herself] ..... necavit (*Hyginius, Fabulae*).
- **Ipse** tria praedia [for himself] ..... **depectus est** (*Cicero, Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- **Hi omnes** lingua, institutis, legibus **inter** [themselves] ..... differunt (*Caesar, De Bello Gallico*).
- **Auxilium** [for themselves] ..... **petunt** (*Cicero, Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*).
- **Haedui** cum [themselves] ..... suaque ab iis **defendere** non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt (*Caesar, De Bello Gallico*).
- **Caesar** cum equitibus DCCCC, quos [for himself] ..... **praesidio reliquerat**, in castra pervenit (*Caesar, Bellum Civile*).
- **Inter** [themselves] ..... **fidem et iuriandum dant** (*Caesar, De Bello Gallico*).

### The indirect reflexive

c/ Read these sentences and pay attention to whom is meant by the reflexive pronoun:

- Caesar me *sibi* vult esse legatum (*Cicero, Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- [Dixit] non *sese* Gallis sed Gallos *sibi* bellum intulisse (*Caesar, De Bello Gallico*).
- Biennum *sibi* satis esse duxerunt (*Caesar, De Bello Gallico*).

d/ Translate into Latin:

- The girl said that the mother had bought a book for her. [ $\nwarrow$  for the girl]

.....

- The girl said that the mother had bought a book for her. [ $\nwarrow$  for a third person, not for the girl]

.....

- The girl said that the mother had bought a book for herself.

.....

## 7. Interrogative pronoun and adjective

[32]

a/ Some of these forms belong to the interrogative pronoun, other forms belong to the interrogative adjective, and other ones can belong to both. Can you distinguish them?

quae ..... quibus ..... quis ..... quem .....

cuius ..... quid ..... quo ..... qui .....

b/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the interrogatives:

- *Quo modo occidit?* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Quis est enim cui via ista non pateat?* (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- *Arcessivit aliquem. Quem aut quando? Nuntium misit. Quem aut ad quem?* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Si per alios fecisse dicis, quaero quos?* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Cuius es?* (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- *Quod est hoc iudicium in quo iam biennum versamur?* (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*).
- *In quo potes me dicere ingratum?* (Cicero, *Philippicae*).

c/ Now write the requested interrogatives in Latin; in some sentences, we have underlined the word to which the interrogative is somehow linked to help you:

- [What] ..... ais? [What] ..... hoc quod te rogo? [What] ..... locos adiisti?  
(Plautus, *Trinumnum*).
- [Whose] ..... dicit filiam? (Plautus, *Aulularia*).
- Decurias scribamus. [What] ..... decurias? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- In [what] ..... urbe vivimus? (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).
- Ista cohors [whose] ..... hominum est? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- At [who] ..... sunt ei, qui rem publicam occupavere? (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- [What] ..... igitur censes? (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

d/ Translate into Latin:

- Who came yesterday and whose teacher did you see yesterday?

.....

- *Which* books have you read?
- .....

- In *which* city do you live and to *which* place are you going?
- .....

- *What* is your name and *whose* student are you?
- .....

- To *whom* did you give the horses?
- .....

## 8. Other interrogative pronouns

[33]

- a/ Make sure you know what we are asking about when using these interrogatives:

• quantus	asks about	a/ quantity	b/ quality	c/ size	d/ which of two
• qualis	asks about	a/ quantity	b/ quality	c/ size	d/ which of two
• uter	asks about	a/ quantity	b/ quality	c/ size	d/ which of two
• quot	asks about	a/ quantity	b/ quality	c/ size	d/ which of two

- b/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the difference between the four interrogatives quantus, qualis, uter and quot:

- Nunc eiusdem Appiae nomen *quantas* tragoeidas excitat! (Cicero, *Pro Milone*).
- *Quantum dedit?* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Aut *quale* est istuc quod poetae serunt? (Cicero, *De Legibus*).
- Etenim si est divinatio, *qualibusnam a perceptis artis proficiscitur?* (Cicero, *De Fato*).

◇

- Hoc primum *quale* est, a non sapiente explicari sapientiam? (Cicero, *Lucullus*).
- *Uter* igitur melior? (Cicero, *De Divinatione*).
- *Quot* modis doceo legem istam, quam vocas, non esse legem? (Cicero, *De Domo Sua*).
- Familiam vero *quantam* habeat quid ego dicam? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

c/ Choose a Latin word from the list below which matches the English in brackets; in some sentences, we have underlined the word to which the interrogative is somehow linked to help you:

*quantum / quanti / utram / quantae / quantus / qualem / utri / quantus / quantum / quanta / quot*

- — Quem quaeritas? — Bacchidem (feminine name). — [Which one] ..... ergo? — Nil scio nisi Bacchidem (Plautus, *Bacchides*).
- [What a big] ..... error est, di immortales! (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- [What a big] ..... nomen illius fuerit, [what big] ..... opes, [what big] ..... in omni genere bellorum gloria, [what big] ..... honores populi Romani, quis ignorat? (Cicero, *Pro Rege Deiotaro*).
- Orationis [how many] ..... sunt partes? (Cicero, *De Partitione Oratoria*).
- [How great] ..... fuisses, si illius diei mentem servare potuisses! (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- [What kind of] ..... igitur hominem natura inchoavit? (Cicero, *De Finibus*).
- [How large] ..... intervallum tandem inter te atque illum interiectum [esse] putas? (Cicero, *Pro Rabirio*).
- [Which one of both] ..... vos, Quirites, convenit credere? (Asconius Pedianus, *Pro Scauro*).

d/ Now do the same without a list:

- Fidem vero eius [how big] ..... inter socios existimari putatis? (Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*).
- [What kind of man] ..... fuerit Cn. Pompeius dubitabimus? (Cicero, *Pro Balbo*).
- Nescit [how much] ..... auctoritate valeat? (Cicero, *De Domo Sua*). ↗ Do not make it agree with *auctoritate*.
- [What kind of] ..... autem deum intellegere nos possumus nulla virtute praeditum?  
(Cicero, *De Natura Deorum*).
- Tmolites ille vicanus, homo non modo nobis sed ne inter suos quidem notus, vos docebit [what kind of man]  
..... sit L. Flaccus? (Cicero, *Pro Flacco*).
- Altera filium dat tibi, altera patrimonium: pater, [which one of both] ..... magis dives est?  
(Seneca senior, *Controversiae*).
- [What a large] ..... multitudo hominum convenerit ad hoc iudicium vides (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

e/ Translate into Latin:

- How large is your family?

.....

- *How many* brothers do you have? ⇔ *Be careful with the way you translate "How many"!*
- 

- *What* a large crowd I have seen in the forum!
- 

- *How large* do you think that this city is?
- 

- *What kind* of books did he write?
- 

◊

- Look *what kind* of house I have built!
- 

- Which one of the two books do you want to read?
- 

- *Which one of the two* women arrived first?
- 

- To *which one of the two* masters did the slaves give the food?
- 

## 9. Relative pronoun

[34]

a/ Fill the table for the relative pronoun:

singular			plural		
<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neuter</i>
Nom.	- <i>qui</i>	-	-	-	- <i>quae</i>
Acc.	-	-	- <i>quod</i>	-	-
Gen.	-	-	-	- <i>quorum</i>	-
Dat.	-	-	-	-	- <i>quibus</i>
Abl.	-	- <i>qua</i>	-	-	-

b/ Complete these sentences writing the necessary form of the relative to make the sentence make sense; the relative clause, except the relative itself, is in italics:

- Libri ..... *nunc ego habeo* patris sunt.
- Puellae ..... *haec magistra docuit* doctae sunt.
- Calamum ..... *scribis* heri in foro emi.
- Urbem *in* ..... *habitabas* Caesar delevit.
- Nunc videbo cives ..... *tu heri omnia dixisti*.
- Consul ..... *filiam tu amas* dives est.

c/ Translate into Latin; the whole relative clause is in italics:

- I have seen the soldiers *about whom you told me yesterday*.
- .....

- I love the citizens *that have built these temples*.
- .....

- The girls *with whom you play* are wise.
- .....

- The poet *whose books you are always reading* is in the city today.
- .....

- The temple *in which you were yesterday* is very nice.
- .....

## 10. Indefinite relative pronoun

[35]

a/ Apart from *quicumque* etc., what other indefinite relative pronoun is there in Latin?

.....

b/ Read these sentences:

- *Quodcumque mihi facere imperavisti, facio.*
- *Ego bonos viros aut eos quicumque dicentur boni sequar* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).

- *Quoscumque de te queri audivi quacumque potui ratione placavi* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Quintum Fratrem*).
- *Quaecumque navis ex Asia, quae ex Syria, quae Tyro, quae Alexandria venerat, statim custodibus tenebatur* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Quidquid boni per facultates poterat coemebat* (Petronius, *Satyricon*).

c/ Translate the English indefinite relative into Latin by choosing one of the words in the list; in some sentences, we have underlined the word to which the indefinite relative is somehow linked to help you:

*quaecumque / quibuscumque / quicquid / quisquis / quidquid / quidquid*

- [Whoever] ..... es, [whatever] ..... tibi nomen est, senex, summum Iovem deosque do testes (Plautus, *Menaechmi*).
- At ipse respondet [whatever] ..... potest (Cicero, *De Haruspicum Responso*).
- Ego vero hos in omni fortuna, [whichever] ..... erit oblata, complectar (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*).
- Te tamen oramus, [whichever] ..... erimus in terris, ut ... (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- [Whatever] ..... est datum libenter accepi (Cicero, *Ad Atticum*).

d/ Translate into Latin:

- *Whomever* you see, tell me immediately.
- .....

- Give me that book, *whatever* it is.
- .....

- *Whoever* lives in this city is rich.
- .....

- To *whomever* you give money, he will be happy.
- .....

## 11. Other indefinite pronouns

[36]

### a) Indefinites that derive from the relative

Make sure you know the meanings of these indefinites:

aliquis ..... quidam ..... quilibet .....

quis ..... quisque ..... quisquam .....

▷▷ Aliquis, aliquid

1/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the indefinites:

- Erit etiam *aliquis* qui haec omnia dissimulare ac neglegere possit? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Cupio *aliquem* emere puerum (Plautus, *Curculio*).
- Litteras, credo, misit *alicui* sicario (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Audio; nunc dicis *aliquid* quod ad rem pertineat (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

2/ Translate the English indefinite into Latin by choosing one of the words in the list; in some sentences, we have underlined the word to which the indefinite relative is somehow linked to help you:

*aliquo / aliquorum / aliquid / aliquo*

- Est tamen hoc [something] ..... , tametsi non est satis (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*).
- Acerbum est ab [somebody] ..... circumveniri, acerbius a propinquuo (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Posteaquam e portu piratae non metu [any] ..... adfecti sed satietate exierunt, ... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Timeo ne illum [of some people] ..... furor excipiat (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Brutum*).

3/ Translate into Latin:

- Yesterday *somebody* came and brought *something* for you.

.....

- I gave this to *somebody*, now I don't remember to whom.

.....

- He is living in *some* city in Italy.
- 

- Yesterday my son was playing with *some* friend.
- 

▷▷ Quis, quid

**1/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the indefinites:**

- Arioistus postulavit ne *quem* peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Num *quis* est qui [eos] tuendos putet? (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Timui ne *quis* de mea fide atque integritate dubitaret (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

**2/ Translate the English indefinite into Latin by choosing one of the words in the list:**

*quid / quid / cui / quis / quid*

- Vereor ne [something] ..... mihi desit (Rutilius Lupus, *Schemata Lexeos*).
- Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit ne [something] ..... gravius in fratrem statueret (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Si [to anybody] ..... [something] ..... simile dicas, ... (Cicero, *De Oratore*).
- Si [anybody] ..... illuc me vocat, venio (Cicero, *Pro Flacco*).

**3/ Translate into Latin:**

- Have you seen *anybody*?
- 

- If you see *someone*, tell the commander.
- 

- I'm afraid that he may do *something* bad against you.
- 

- I will be here, so that you may not tell *anybody* about this.
-

▷▷ Quidam, quiddam

1/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the indefinites:

- *Quidam eadem illa nocte ad me venit* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Prope est spelunca quaedam conversa ad aquilonem* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Filium suum ad propinquum suum quendam mittit ad cenam* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Ad urbem cum esset, audivit Dioni cuidam Siculo permagnam venisse hereditatem* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

2/ Write the missing indefinite by choosing one of the words in the list; in some sentences, we have underlined the word to which the indefinite is somehow linked to help you:

*quibusdam / quasdam / quoddam / quarundam*

- *Vita arborum ..... inmensa credi potest* (Plinius Secundus, *Naturalis Historia*).
- *Deinde a ..... Syracusanis admonetur* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Omnes artes quae ad humanitatem pertinent habent ..... commune vinclum et quasi cognatione quadam inter se continentur* (Cicero, *Pro Archia*).
- *Interfectus est propter ..... seditionum suspiciones C. Gracchus* (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).

▷▷ Quisque, quidque

1/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the indefinites:

- *Nostrum enim unus quisque, qui tam beati quam iste est non sumus, tam delicati esse non possumus* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Ut quisque in fuga postremus, ita in periculo princeps erat* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Optimo et nobilissimo cuique meam orationem gratissimam esse oportet* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

2/ Translate the English indefinite into Latin by choosing one of the words in the list; in some sentences, we have underlined the word to which the indefinite is somehow linked to help you:

*quemque / cuique / quemque / quidque*

- *Dicebant quantum [to each one] ..... eius iussu nummorum esset datum* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Suum [each one] ..... scelus agitat* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

- Aderat in senatu Verres pater istius, et flens unum [each one] ..... senatorum rogabat ut filio suo parceret (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Ii qui hospites ad ea quae visenda sunt solent ducere et unum [each thing] ..... ostendere, ... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

**3/ Translate into Latin:**

- I have told the same to *each* student.
- .....

- I have lived in *each* city in this country.
- .....

- *Each* citizen has received a letter.
- .....

- The senate gave a prize to the best speakers. [Rephrase by means of using *each* in singular.]
- .....

▷▷ *Quilibet, quidlibet*

**1/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the indefinites:**

- Ad calamitatem *quilibet* rumor valet (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae*).
- Quod tu, quod faceret *quilibet*, ille facit (Ovid, *Ars Amatoria*).
- Si aliis *quilibet* contradixisset, inhumanam rem fecisset (Quintilianus, *Declamationes Minores*).

**2/ Translate the English indefinite into Latin by choosing one of the words in the list; in some sentences, we have underlined the word to which the indefinite is somehow linked to help you:**

*quemlibet / cuiuslibet / quemlibet*

- Licet enim eligerent et probarent [whomever] ..... (Cicero, *Rhetorica ad Herennium*).
- Non minoris aestimamus quam [whatever] ..... amplissimum Sardiensem triumphum (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- ... , idoneus arti [whichever] ..... (Horace, *Epistulae*).

▷▷ Quisquam, quidquam

1/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the indefinites:

- Quod egomet solus feci, nec *quisquam* aliis affuit, in tabernaclo, id quidem hodie numquam poterit dicere (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- Intellegere *quisquam* potis est? (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- Vivo fit quod numquam *quisquam* mortuo faciet mihi (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- Iugulare civem ne iure quidem *quisquam* bonus volt (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

2/ Translate the English indefinite into Latin by choosing one of the words in the list; in some sentences, we have underlined the word to which the indefinite is somehow linked to help you:

*cuiquam / quidquam / quemquam / cuiquam*

- Neque ego hoc homine [anybody] ..... vidi magis malum et maleficum (Plautus, *Pseudolus*).
- Non modo proditori, sed ne perfugae quidem locus in meis castris [any] ..... fuit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Nihil [to anybody] ..... probari volo quod non ante mihi met ipsi probatum sit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Vix [anything] ..... in Sulla's operibus clarus duxerim quam ... (Velleius Paterculus, *Historia Romana*).

3/ Translate into Latin; in some cases, you will have to translate a rephrased English sentence in order to use the indefinite:

- Is there *anyone* who can defeat Caesar's army? Nobody, you know it.

.....

- I saw hardly *anyone* yesterday in the forum.

.....

- He told us everything, and he denied that he took *anything* from the house.

.....

- Many citizens came to the city, and *nobody* went to the temple.

.....

## b) Indefinites that do not derive from the relative

1/ Make sure that you know the meaning of these indefinites:

unus	.....	alius	.....	uter	.....
solus	.....	ullus	.....	uterque	.....
totus	.....	alter	.....		

2/ Answer these questions:

What is the difference in meaning between **alius** and **alter**?

.....

And between **ullus** and **uter**?

.....

**Uter** has also another meaning as an interrogative. What is it?

.....

To what other indefinite (of those that come from the relative) can **uterque** be linked in meaning?

.....

▷▷ Unus, solus and totus

1/ Read these sentences:

- *Una igitur in tota civitate fabula erat* (Petronius, *Satyricon*).
- *Solus tu inventus es qui cum accusatoribus sederes* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Omnia in unius potestate ac moderatione vertentur* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Adsunt enim Puteoli toti; frequentissimi venerunt ad hoc iudicium mercatores, ...* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Ne Persae quidem, cum bellum toti Graeciae, dis hominibusque, indixissent, ...* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

2/ Translate the English indefinite into Latin by choosing one of the words in the list; in some sentences, we have underlined the word to which the indefinite is somehow linked to help you:

*solo / totius / uno / uno / soli / uno*

- Ego hoc [one] ..... crimine illum condemnem necesse est (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*).
- Ita magnum ut Latine [with one] ..... verbo exprimi non possit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Furta praetoris ex [one] ..... oppido [only] ..... exportata sunt (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- At enim istum Siculi [only] ..... persecuntur (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Venisse tempus aiebant ut vitam salutemque [of the whole] ..... provinciae defendarem (Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*).

3/ Translate into Latin:

- Only the Romans defeated the Gauls.
- .....

- The Romans defeated *only* the Gauls.
- .....

- I travelled through the *whole* country.
- .....

- I told this to *only* one citizen.
- .....

▷▷ **alius** and **ullus**

1/ Answer these questions:

- In what case, in its declension, is **alius** replaced by another pronoun? And by which one?
- .....

- Of what pronoun is **ullus** the equivalent adjective?

a/ **quisque**    b/ **quisquam**    c/ **aliquis**

## 2/ Read these sentences:

- *Aliud est male dicere, aliud accusare* (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- Non enim possumus omnia per nos agere; *alius* in *alia* est re magis utilis (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Erit dignior locus *ullus* in terris qui ... ? (Cicero, *Pro Milone*).
- Hasce eius cupiditates exponam *alio* loco (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Dixit hunc ne in convivio quidem *ullo* fere interfuisse (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

## 3/ Translate the English indefinite into Latin by choosing one of the words in the list; in some sentences, we have underlined the word to which the indefinite is somehow linked to help you:

*alius / ullos / alium / alio / alios / ullas / alias*

- Non enim potest sperare populus Romanus esse [other people] ..... in senatu qui recte possint iudicare, vos si non potueritis (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Nihil est cur [one] ..... [another one] ..... iudice melior aut sapientior existimetur (Cicero, *Pro Fonteio*).
- Ad te ipsum, P. Servili, num misit [any] ..... conlega litteras? (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Sed cum [one] ..... [another one] ..... timet, ... (Cicero, *De Republica*).
- Nondum [any] ..... duces habebamus, non copias (Cicero, *Philippicae*).

## 4/ Translate these sentences into Latin. Use the hints in brackets to help you:

- The ambassadors brought *different* presents. [ $\rightarrow$  Use a combination of *alius/alias* in the necessary cases]
- .....

- The soldiers encouraged *each other* before the battle. [ $\rightarrow$  Use a combination of *alius/alias* in the necessary cases]
- .....

- I freed *some* prisoners, I sent *others* to Caesar. [ $\rightarrow$  Use *alius* twice, in the necessary case]
- .....

- I went to the library, and there was not *any* book which I had not read. [↗ Use *ullus* in the necessary case, as the sentence is negative]
- 

- Have you given money to *any* poor man? No, I know that you have not. [↗ Use *ullus*, as the expected answer is clearly negative]
- 

▷▷ alter, uter and uterque

**1/ Read these sentences:**

- Cum eius duae partes sint, quarum *altera* simplex, *altera* iuncta sit, simplicem prius consideremus (Cicero, *De Inventione*).
- Quid ergo inter me stultum et te sapientem interest, si *uterque* [id] habere volumus? (Seneca iunior, *Dialogi*).
- In *utro* culpa erit (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- Nam duo isti sunt T. Roscii, quorum *alteri* Capitoni cognomen est, iste qui adest Magnus vocatur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

**2/ Translate the English indefinite into Latin by choosing one of the words in the list; in some sentences, we have underlined the word to which the indefinite is somehow linked to help you:**

*utri / alterum / utroque / utri / alterum / utroque*

- Est enim in [each of both] ..... et materia et tractatio: materia in verbis, tractatio in collocatione verborum (Cicero, *Orator*).
- Utrumlibet elige; [the one] ..... incredibile est, [the other one] ..... nefarium (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Adsum [to whom] ..... volo (Seneca senior, *Controversiae*).
- Admirantes quaeramus ab [each of both] ..... , quonam modo vitam agere possimus (Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*).
- Negat ergo esse dubium horum ignium sol [to either] ..... similis sit (Cicero, *De Natura Deorum*).

3/ Translate these sentences into Latin. Use the hints in brackets to help you:

- If *either* of you comes back, I will be happy, but if *both* of you come back, I will be happier. [↗ Use *uter* and *uterque* in the necessary cases]

.....

- I gave another book to *the other one of the two* students. [↗ Use *alter* in the necessary case]

.....

- *Each of the two boys* is reading a *different* book. [↗ Use a combination of *alter/alter* in the necessary cases]

.....

## 12. Negative pronouns

[37]

▷▷ nullus and neuter

a/ What is the difference between nullus and neuter in meaning?

.....

b/ Read these sentences:

- *Nullo certo itinere exercitum ducit* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- *Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, Caesar suos in castra reduxit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Hic nullo in loco Macedoniae moratus magno impetu tetendit ad Domitium* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- *Eorum neuter triumphavit* (Cicero, *In Pisonem*).
- *Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam quae extra fines cuiusque civitatis fiunt* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Cum tempestas eos neutrō inclinata spe dimicantes diremisset, Romani in posterum diem proelium parant* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

c/ Translate the English negative into Latin by choosing one of the words in the list; in some sentences, we have underlined the word to which the negative is somehow linked to help you:

*nullum / neutri / non nulli / nullius / neutrum / neuter*

- Tu, homo minimi consili, [of no] ..... auctoritatis, ... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- De Scauro et Rutilio breviter licet dicere, quorum [neither] ..... summi oratoris habuit laudem (Cicero, *Brutus*).
- Huic [no] ..... praedium reliquit (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Stipendium [to neither] ..... datur (Sallust, *Historiarum fr. ampliora*).
- Arcessit alter consul designatus Siculos; veniunt [some] ..... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- ... inter flumina duo, [neither] ..... horum transiri poterat (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

d/ Translate into Latin:

- I have been to *neither* city.
- .....

- I have been to *no* city in this country.
- .....

- *Neither* boy told the truth.
- .....

- *Not one* boy in the school told the truth.
- .....

▷▷ nihil-nihilum and nemo

a/ Read these sentences:

- *Nihil* est, Glaucia, quod metuas (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Roscius *neminem* accusat (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Nihil* opus fuit te istic sedere (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Vestrum *nemo* est quin intellegat populum Romanum hoc tempore domestica crudelitate laborare (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

- Tu igitur *nihil* vides? (Cicero, *De Oratore*).
- Debebat Epicrates nummum *nullum nemini* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- ... , quos non sine causa contempsit semper ac pro *nihilo* putavit, ... (Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*).

b/ Translate the English negative into Latin by choosing one of the words in the list:

*nihilo / nemo / nemini / nihil / nihilo / neminem / nihilum*

- [Nobody] ..... erat qui non ardere omnia mallet quam videre ... (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Sic igitur Plancius [in no respect] ..... minus quaestor est factus et tribunus plebis et aedilis quam si esset summo loco natus (Cicero, *Pro Plancio*).
- [Nobody] ..... reperies qui neget (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- [Puto eos responsuros esse] [in nothing] ..... beatorem esse Metellum quam Regulum (Cicero, *De Finibus*).
- Erit aliquid, quod aut ex [nothing] ..... oriatur aut in [nothing] ..... subito occidat (Cicero, *De Divinatione*).
- Cui dixit? [To nobody] ..... (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

c/ Translate into Latin:

- I have *not* done *anything*.

.....

- I have told *nobody* about this.

.....

- Out of *nothing*, they obtained much.

.....

- They consider this of *no* value.

.....

- Saying this, you will persuade *nobody*.

.....

- He does *not* want *anybody* to read this book.

.....

## g) Adverbs and prepositional adverbs

### 1. (unapplied in this book)

### 2. Modal adverbs

[38]

a/ Form the modal adverbs from these adjectives:

bonus	⇒	.....	prudens	⇒	.....	fortis	⇒	.....
doctus	⇒	.....	subitus	⇒	.....	acer	⇒	.....

b/ Write the meaning of each modal adverb:

DEEPLY / WISELY / HURRIEDLY / BY CHANCE / BY FORCE / SUDDENLY / IN SILENCE / RIGHTFULLY / STRANGELY / PRUDENTLY / STRONGLY / WELL / HARSHLY / BY CHANCE

fortiter	.....	prudenter	.....	subito	.....
bene	.....	acriter	.....	silentio	.....
alte	.....	forte	.....	raro	.....
casu	.....	festinatim	.....	iure	.....
docte	.....	vi	.....		

c/ Read these sentences:

- Tum *subito* tempestates coortae sunt maximae (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- His ego rebus, patres conscripti, resistam *vehementer* atque *acriter* (Cicero, *De Lege Agraria*).
- A probus *probe*, a doctus *docte*, sed a rarus non dicitur rare, sed alii *raro* dicunt, alii *rarenter* (Terentius Varro, *De Lingua Latina*).
- Eclipsis solis mirantur, quia *raro* accident (Cicero, *Rhetorica ad Herennium*).
- Dixit is qui *casu* tum Romae fuit, tuus hospes, ... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Testis non solum deterrere verbis, sed etiam *vi* retinere coepit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Propensior benignitas esse debebit in calamitosos, nisi *forte* erunt digni calamitate (Cicero, *De Officiis*).

**d/ Translate into Latin:**

- They fought *fiercely*.
- .....

- *Suddenly*, Caesar arrived.
- .....

- They captured the city *by force*.
- .....

- We went out *in silence* and *prudently*.
- .....

**3. Comparative and superlative of modal adverbs**

[39]

**a/ Complete these tables:**

△ prudently: prudenter

△ well: bene

△ deeply: alte

more prudently: .....

better: .....

more deeply: .....

very prudently: .....

best: .....

very deeply: .....

**b/ Read these sentences:**

- *Tecum, Atrantine, agam lenius* (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- *Quid diutius moror?* (Petronius, *Satyricon*).
- *Dicit liberius atque audacius* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Iniuriam facere fortissime perseverat* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- *Ibi quae cognovimus scribere ad vos quam celerrime voluimus* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- *Dic, dic, quaeso, clarus* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

**c/ Translate into Latin:**

- I did this *badly*, you did it *worse*, he did it *very badly*, and they did *as badly as possible*.
- .....

- I ran *quickly*, you ran *more quickly*, she ran *very quickly*, and they ran *as quickly as possible*.
- .....

## 4. Quantitative adverbs

[40]

a/ Give each Latin adverb its meaning:

TOO MUCH / VERY / MUCH / ENOUGH / A LITTLE / A LITTLE

aliquantum ..... nimis ..... valde .....

magnopere ..... satis ..... parum .....

b/ Complete the sequences positive / comparative / superlative :

multum / ..... / .....

magnopere / ..... / .....

parum / ..... / .....

c/ Read these sentences:

- An vero tu *parum* putas investigatas esse a nobis labis imperi tui? (Cicero, *In Pisonem*).
- Poena in civis *nimis* crudelis putabatur (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Explicat orationem sane longam et verbis *valde* bonis (Cicero, *De Lege Agraria*).
- Cum autem *aliquantum* progressus esset, subito exaudivit ... (Cicero, *De Divinatione*).
- Huic Caesar propter virtutem confidebat *maxime* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Plus* oneris sustuli quam ferre me posse intellego (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

d/ Complete these sentences by adding the necessary Latin adverb from the list:

*satis / magis / valde / minime / satis / plus*

- Mihi vero ista [very much] ..... probata sunt (Cicero, *De Finibus*).
- Ille tamen confitetur [more (meaning quantity)] ..... se petere quam debeatur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).
- Ut alia omittam, hoc [enough] ..... est (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Planities erat magna et in ea tumulus terrenus [enough] ..... grandis (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

- *Ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem [in a very low degree] ..... firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Quid viro bono et quieto et bono civi [more (meaning intensity)] ..... convenit quam abesse a civilibus controversiis?* (Caesar, *Epistulae ad Ciceronem*).

e/ Translate into Latin:

- Have you got *enough* water?  
.....

- You have *much* money, she has *more* money, they have *the most* money.  
.....

- I am tired, I have run *too much*.  
.....

- After the battle the soldiers were *very tired*.  
.....

## 5. Adverbs of time

[41]

a/ Connect each Latin adverb with its meaning:

IN THE MORNING / BEFORE / AT NIGHT / NOW / MEANWHILE / IMMEDIATELY / HARDLY / SOMETIMES / EVERY YEAR / FROM TIME TO TIME / EVER / ALWAYS / FINALLY / YESTERDAY / TODAY / TOMORROW / THE DAY BEFORE / THE DAY AFTER / EVERY DAY / FORMERLY

statim	.....	identidem	.....	vix	.....
hodie	.....	umquam	.....	heri	.....
cras	.....	quotannis	.....	noctu	.....
pridie	.....	interdum	.....	nunc	.....
postridie	.....	cotidie	.....	denique	.....
semper	.....	mane	.....	quondam	.....
interea	.....	antea	.....		

**b/ Complete these sequences and answer the question:**FOR A LONG TIME: *diu*OFTEN: *saepe*

FOR LONGER: .....

MORE OFTEN: .....

FOR VERY LONG: .....

VERY OFTEN: .....

▷ Nuper means RECENTLY; how do you say VERY RECENTLY? .....

**c/ Read these sentences:**

- Ex provincia *denique* bonis fortunisque omnibus eruptis profugerunt (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Haec ego admirans referebam tamen oculos ad terram *identidem* (Cicero, *De Republica*).
- Alfenus *interea* Romae cum isto gladiatore vetulo cotidie pugnabat (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Fabula etiam *nonnumquam*, etsi est incredibilis, tamen homines commovet (Cicero, *De Partitione Oratoria*).
- Sicut *pridie* feceramus, post meridiem in Academiam descendimus (Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes*).

**d/ Choose the correct Latin adverbs from the list:***statim / paulisper / tum / deinde / saepissime / diutius*

- Quoniam ille hic constitit [for a short time] ..... , mihi quoque necesse est paulum commorari (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).
- [Afterwards] ..... Romae dies XXX fere Quinctius commoratur (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Age *nunc* illa videamus, iudices, quae [immediately] ..... consecuta sunt (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- [Then] ..... illi intellexerunt se id quod a malo auctore emissent [for longer] ..... obtinere non posse (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Videtisne ut apud Homerum [very often] ..... Nestor de virtutibus suis praedicet? (Cicero, *Cato maior de Senectute*).

**e/ Translate into Latin:**

- He was here *yesterday*, but I have not seen him *today*.
- .....

- Maybe you will see him *tomorrow*.
- .....

- I always run *in the morning*, sometimes *at midday*, and hardly *at night*.
- .....

- Cicero delivered speeches *more often* than Octavius.
- .....

- I have *recently* been in that city.
- .....

- I have lived in Rome *for longer than* you have.
- .....

## 6. Adverbs of place

[42]

a/ Give each Latin adverb its meaning:

BELow / SIDE BY SIDE / AROUND / THERE / WHERE / SOMEWHERE / FAR AWAY / HERE / ON THIS SIDE / ABOVE / OUTSIDE / FURTHER THERE

alicubi .....	ubi .....	infra .....
citra .....	supra .....	iuxta .....
ultra .....	procul .....	circa .....
illic .....	hic .....	extra .....

b/ Complete these two sequences:

HERE: hic

THERE: illic

TOWARDS HERE: .....

TOWARDS THERE: .....

FROM HERE: .....

FROM THERE: .....

So, place *where* ends in -ic

place *towards* ends in .....

place *from* ends in .....

c/ Complete these other sequences:

THERE: ibi

WHERE: ubi

SOMEWHERE ELSE: alibi

TOWARDS THERE: .....

TOWARDS WHERE: .....

TOWARDS SOMEWHERE ELSE: .....

FROM THERE: .....

FROM WHERE: .....

FROM SOMEWHERE ELSE: .....

So, in these three sequences place *where* ends in -i  
 place *towards* ends in .....  
 place *from* ends in .....

d/ Complete the sequences *positive - comparative - superlative* :

*longe* / ..... / .....  
*prope* / ..... / .....

e/ Read these sentences: (remember that many of these adverbs can also work as prepositions, governing a noun)

- *Undique loci natura Helvetii continentur* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Per exploratores Caesar certior factus est quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Alibi te melius [melius est] querere hospitium tibi* (Plautus, *Circulio*).
- *Non longius hostes aberant quam quo telum adigi posset* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Utinam hic prope adesset alicubi atque audiret haec!* (Terentius Afer, *Adelphoe*).

f/ Translate into Latin:

- *Wherever he is, there is trouble.*
- .....

- *Remain here, do not go there.*
- .....

- *Then I was not here, I was somewhere else.*
- .....

- *He lives far away.*
- .....

## 7. Interrogative adverbs

[43]

a/ Complete these sentences:

*quomodo / unde / quantum / cur / quo / ubi / quando*

- [How] ..... *igitur ista explicas?* (Cicero, *De Partitione Oratoria*).
- [When] ..... *es persecutus?* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- [From where] ..... *iste amor tam improviso ac tam repentinus?* (Cicero, *De Lege Agraria*).
- *Videtisne igitur [how much] ..... intersit inter populum Romanum et contionem?* (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*).
- *Qui sunt ei? [Why] ..... non nominantur?* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- [(To) where] ..... *nunc abis?* (Plautus, *Asinaria*).
- [Where] ..... *erant ceteri creditores?* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

b/ Translate into Latin:

- *How* have you done this difficult task?

.....

- *To where* did Caesar take the troops?

.....

- *How much* money have you obtained?

.....

- *Why* don't they want to remain here?

.....

- *For how long* do you want to be absent?

.....

## 8. Indefinite adverbs

[44]

a/ Transform these adverbs into indefinite adverbs and provide the meaning of the indefinite:

indefinite	meaning
------------	---------

ubi	.....	.....
-----	-------	-------

quo	.....	.....
-----	-------	-------

quando	.....	.....
quo modo	.....	.....
unde	.....	.....

**b/ Complete these sentences:**

- Tu sic attende, ut, si fueris iam [somewhere] ..... , ablativo respondeas; si adhuc velis ire, accusativo (Remmius Palaemon, *Ars*).
- Iube hunc abire hinc [to somewhere] ..... . (Terentius Afer, *Heauton Timorumenos*).
- Spero [from somewhere] ..... hodie me inventurum esse auxilium argentarium (Plautus, *Pseudolus*).
- Finibus quidem nostris [at some point] ..... excesserunt atque alias terras petierunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Ei qui hunc accuset possim [somehow] ..... ignoscere (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

**c/ Translate these pairs of sentences into Latin:**

- Where will the battle take place? It will take place *somewhere*.

.....

- How will you find your brother? I will find him *somewhere*.

.....

- Where did you go after the assembly? I went *somewhere*.

.....

- When will you arrive? I will arrive *at some point*.

.....

- From where have they sent these books? They have sent them *from somewhere*.

.....

**9. Affirmative and negative adverbs**

[45]

**a/ In this group of adverbs, can you determine which are affirmative and which are negative?**

sane, profecto, nequaquam, quidem, minime, haud, certe, ne quidem

Affirmative: .....

Negative: .....

**b/ Read these sentences:**

- *Id erat profecto* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- *Bidis oppidum est tenue sane, non longe a Syracusis* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Huic ne perire quidem tacite obscureque conceditur* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- *I sane cum illo, Phrugia* (Plautus, *Aulularia*).
- *Illud mihi nequaquam dignum industria conataque meo videbatur* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

**c/ Insert the correct adverb from the list:**

*forsitan / ne quidem / certe / nimirum / minime*

- *Venerat, ut opinor, haec res in iudicium.* [Certainly] ..... . *Quis erat petitor?* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).
- *Audacissimus ego ex omnibus?* [Not at all] ..... (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *At enim* [perhaps] ..... *hoc tibi veniat in mentem* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).
- *At hoc ab accusatore* [not even] ..... *dici* ..... *audistis* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Quid est possidere?* [No doubt] ..... *in possessione esse earum rerum quae possunt eo tempore possideri* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

**d/ Translate into Latin:**

- Are you a good citizen? *Certainly, no doubt!*

.....

- Was Catilina an honest senator? *In no way, not at all!*

.....

- *Perhaps* I will go to Rome tomorrow.

.....

- He has never read a book, *not even* a short one.

.....

- I *neither hate nor* love them.

.....

## 10. Prepositional adverbs

[46]

a/ What is the difference between a preposition and a prepositional adverb?

.....  
.....

b/ Connect each prepositional adverb with its meaning:

PUBLICLY / ON THIS SIDE / ABOVE / BEYOND / AROUND / IN FRONT / BELOW / BECAUSE OF / FACE TO FACE / SECRETLY / WITHOUT

citra .....	sine .....	ultra .....
contra .....	coram .....	circa .....
propter .....	supra .....	infra .....
palam .....	clam .....	

▷ Of the former list, which are the only four ones that must be followed by the ablative instead of the accusative?

.....                        .....

c/ Complete these sentences choosing the correct word from the list:

circum / coram / clam / sine / palam / propter / extra / sine

- Libenter haec [face to face] ..... cum Q. Catulo et Q. Hortensio, summis et clarissimis viris, disputarem (Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*).
- Ex senatu in hoc consilium delecti estis [because of] ..... severitatem (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Nemo est [outside] ..... istam coniurationem perditorum hominum qui te non metuat, nemo qui non oderit (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).
- [Secretly] ..... ex Sardinia est fugere conatus (Cicero, *Pro Scauro*).
- Qui tantum facinus commiserunt non modo [without] ..... cura quiescere sed ne spirare quidem [without] ..... metu possunt (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Ingens [around] ..... eam nobilium feminarum turba constiterat (Curtius Rufus, *Historiae Alexandri Magni*).
- Cum hoc modo accusas, Eruci, nonne hoc [publicly] ..... dicas: "Ego ... "? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

d/ Translate into Latin using only one word from the list for the expressions in italics:

*infra / extra / clam / intra / palam / supra*

- I will speak *in the presence of* the senators.

.....

- He always does everything *without my knowledge*. [↗ Rephrase it.]

.....

- The citizens are *inside* the city, the enemy is *outside* the city.

.....

- Part of the fleet sailed north of (*above*) Ephesus, part south of (*under*) Ephesus.

.....

### Exercises on all adverbs

[47]

1/ Read these sentences; each sentence includes one or more adverbs; they have not been grouped by the type of adverb: when you come across one, underline it and say what type of adverb it is.

- Servus celeriter clam veniebat. Type of adverb: .....

- Forte eum extra domum inveni. Type of adverb: .....

- Fortiter cum eis pugaverunt. Type of adverb: .....

- Noctu semper mihi placet legere, sed heri non potui. Type of adverb: .....

- Denique, post multas horas, opus meridie perfeci. Type of adverb: .....

- Vi compellunt me hoc facere. Type of adverb: .....

◇

- Nimis vini bibis, o amice, minus te decet bibere. Type of adverb: .....

- Minime. Magis bibere volo. Type of adverb: .....

- Identidem vix dormio, si laborare debo. Type of adverb: .....

- Quotannis Romam imus et ibi alicubi dormimus. Type of adverb: .....

- Ego meum fratrem postridie vidi. Type of adverb: .....

- Ut supra dixi, Caesar Gallos vicit. Type of adverb: .....



- Ubi habitat? Fortasse procul habitat?Type of adverb: .....
- Minime, proxime habito.Type of adverb: .....
- Debes pecuniam undecumque obtinere.Type of adverb: .....
- Quomodo vis linguam Latinam discere?Type of adverb: .....
- Volo eam aliquo modo discere.Type of adverb: .....
- Quo lente et silentio is?Type of adverb: .....

**2/ Translate into Latin:**

- In no way will I do this.
- .....

- How are you?
- .....

- I am well.
- .....

- I run more quickly than you.
- .....

- The enemy came from everywhere.
- .....



- Come as quickly as possible.
- .....

- I see neither the students nor the teacher.
- .....

- I will read for a short time.
- .....

- Today I have worked too much.
- .....

◊

- Then you must sleep tomorrow.
- .....

- Not only tomorrow, but forever.
- .....

- I saw him somewhere, and then he went somewhere else.
- .....

- From here he went there.
- .....

## h) The correlatives

### 1. Correlative adverbs

[48]

#### a) Definitions and examples

1/ Complete the list of five roles that a family of correlatives may have:

- Demonstrative
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

2/ Answer these questions:

▷ Two of the roles will share the same word. Which ones?

.....

▷ What do we add to the interrogative in order to form the indefinite?

.....

▷ What do we add to the interrogative in order to form the indefinite relative?

.....

#### b) The local correlative adverbs

1/ Complete the family of correlatives of the adverbs ubi? WHERE? and quo? TO WHERE?:

- Demonstrative: .....
- Relative: .....
- Indefinite: .....
- Indefinite relative: .....
- Interrogative: ubi? quo?

2/ Complete the family of correlatives of the adverbs **unde?** FROM WHERE? and **qua?** THROUGH WHERE?:

- Demonstrative: .....
- Relative: .....
- Indefinite: .....
- Indefinite relative: .....
- Interrogative:      **unde?** **qua?**

3/ Read this dialogue (possibly the most ridiculous dialogue you have ever read in your life), paying attention to the correlatives in italics:

- *Unde venis et quo is?*
- *Venio alicunde, et aliquo eo.*
- *Fortasse eo is, ubi ego heri fui?*
- *Fortasse. Quocumque ego eo, tu semper scire vis.*
- *Et quid accidit ibi in loco unde venis? Ibi undecumque venis, semper aliquid accidit.*
- *Ibi idem accidit ac hic.*
- *Et ubi sunt nunc senatores?*
- *Nescio, puto eos alicubi dormire. Ubi cumque sunt, nihil faciunt. Nunc necesse est mihi domum ire.*
- *Et nunc qua is? Per forum?*
- *Sic est, sed quacumque ambulo, semper eos video quos videre nolo.*
- *Decet tibi aliqua ire ubi hos homines non videas.*

4/ Translate this dialogue (just as ridiculous as the former) into Latin, using correlatives for the words in italics:

- *From where did Pompeius arrive yesterday?*

.....

- *I do not know, from somewhere.*

.....

- *And to where will he lead his army?*

- .....
- *To somewhere*, maybe towards the mountains.

.....

  - *Through where?* Through the middle of the city?

.....

  - No. *Wherever* his soldiers are, people are always afraid.

.....

  - And also *there*, *to wherever* he leads them. And *where* is he now?

.....

  - *Somewhere*, near the city. *From there* he wants to lead them *to where* the Senate orders.

.....

### c) The temporal correlative adverbs

1/ Complete the family of correlatives of the adverb quando? WHEN?:

- Demonstrative: .....
- Relative: .....
- Indefinite: .....
- Indefinite relative: .....
- Interrogative: quando?

2/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the correlatives in italics:

- Possumus aliquando de re pecunaria disceptare? (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- *Quandocumque* igitur nostros mors claudet ocellos, ... (Propertius, *Elegiae*).
- *Quando* id quod imperaretur recusavit? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Quod si quando* accidit, *tum* fit ut ... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

**3/ Translate into Latin, using correlatives for the words in italics:**

- *When* will you go to Rome?
- .....

- *Whenever* you order me to go, I will go.
- .....

- I will go to Rome *at some point*.
- .....

- Maybe the battle will take place *then*.
- .....

**d) The frequentative correlative adverbs****1/ Complete the family of correlatives of the adverb   *quotiens?*    HOW OFTEN?:**

➤ Demonstrative: .....

➤ Relative: .....

➤ Indefinite: .....

➤ Indefinite relative: .....

➤ Interrogative:      *quotiens?*

**2/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the correlatives in italics:**

- *Is, quotiens* Naevius in Galliam profectus est, procuratorem Romae reliquit (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Si ego accusator *totiens* de re eadem dicerem, vererer ne animos vestros offendrerem, iudices (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Semper equidem magno cum metu incipio dicere; *quotienscumque* dico, totiens mihi videor in iudicium venire (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- *Quotiens* vero consulem interficere conatus es! (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).
- Domi illius *aliquotiens* fuisti (Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*).

**3/ Translate into Latin, using correlatives for the words in italics:**

- I have been in Italy *as many times* as you.
- .....

- At several times Caesar had ordered him not to move the camp.
- .....

- How many times do you eat every day?
- .....

- Why did Catilina try to kill Cicero so many times?
- .....

- However often Caesar asks you to do this, don't obey him.
- .....

## 2. Correlative adjectives

[49]

### a) The correlatives SUCH ... AS and AS LARGE ... AS

1/ For each pair, what would the difference between the two sentences be?

- Villam in agris *talem* non habeo *qualem* tu habes / Villam in agris *tantam* non habeo *quantam* tu habes.
- .....
- .....

- *Tales* agros non habeo *quales* tu habes / *Tantos* agros non habeo *quertos* tu habes.
- .....
- .....

2/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the correlatives in italics:

- Ad arbitrium hoc animo adimus ut neque nihil neque *tantum quantum* postulavimus consequamur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).
- Quis umquam ad arbitrium, *quantum* petiit, *tantum* abstulit? Nemo (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).
- Neque *tantum* me exspectatio accusationis meae commovet *quantum* istius insidiae nefariae (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Ac si quis est *talis qualis* esse omnis oportebat, ... (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).
- Sed ut facillime, *quales* simus, *tales* esse videamur, ... (Cicero, *De Officiis*).
- Licet *tales* consules agere, *quales* ante principes erant (Plinius Caecilius, *Panegyricus*).
- Intellegetis enim nullis hominibus quemquam *tanto odio quanto* istum Syracusanis et esse et fuisse (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

**3/ Translate into Latin, using correlatives for the words in italics:**

- My house is not *such as* yours, it is not very nice.
- .....

- I had never heard *such a* speaker *as* the one I have heard today.
- .....

- Brutus did not have *so large* an army *as* Octavius had.
- .....

- I do not live in *so large* a city *as* you do.
- .....

**b) The whole series of correlative adjectives****1/ Complete the family of correlatives of the adjectives qualis? OF WHAT KIND? and quantus? HOW LARGE?:**

➤ Demonstrative: .....

➤ Relative: .....

➤ Indefinite: .....

➤ Indefinite relative: .....

➤ Interrogative:      qualis?    quantus?

**2/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the correlatives in italics:**

- Respondere possum me, *qualiscumque* sum, eundem esse qui fui (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- Nec umquam *tale* fecit *quale* tu mihi (Plautus, *Menaechmi*).
- Nescis *quantas* vires virtus habeat (Cicero, *Paradoxa Stoicorum*).
- Dum *tale* facies *quale* adhuc, assiduo edes, communicabo semper te mensa mea (Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus*).
- ... Decimum Brutum et P. Scipionem consules – *quos* et *quantos* viros! – ... (Cicero, *De Legibus*).



- Id *quale* sit quaerimus. Est autem *tale quale* floruit Athenis (Cicero, *De Optimo Genere Oratorum*).
- At in rebus tristissimis *quantos* excitat risus! (Cicero, *Philippicae*). [↗ The usage of *quantos* here is discussible.]

- *Hic, qualiscumque est, quid de nobis existimavit?* (Seneca iunior, *Apocolocyntosis*).
- *Quantas res turbo, quantas moveo machinas* (Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus*).

**3/ Translate into Latin, using correlatives for the words in italics:**

- *However large* an army you have , you will not conquer the city.

- *What kind* of books do you read?

- I read *such* books *as* you never read.

- How large was the army?

- The army was *as large as* Caesar's army.

**c) The series of WHO / WHAT**

**1/ Complete the family of correlatives of the adjectives quis / quid? WHO / WHAT ?**

- Demonstrative: .....
- Relative: .....
- Indefinite: .....
- Indefinite relative: .....
- Interrogative: quis? quid?

**2/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the correlatives in italics:**

- *Quicumque* hoc fecit, suppicio dignus est (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Quoscumque* potuerunt, togatos interemerunt (Cicero, *Pro Flacco*).
- Litteras, credo, misit *alicui* sicario *qui* Romae noverat neminem (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

- *Qui locus orbi terrae iam non erat alicui destinatus?* (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*).
- *Neque praeterea quid possis dicere invenio* (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*).

**3/ Translate into Latin, using correlatives for the words in italics:**

- *Who* came yesterday?

.....

- *Somebody* came, but I do not know *who*.

.....

- *Whoever* says this, is wrong.

.....

- *Whatever* you teach me, I learn *it*.

.....

#### d) The series of HOW MANY

**1/ Complete the family of correlatives of the adjective *quot?* HOW MANY ?**

➤ Relative: .....

➤ Indefinite: .....

➤ Indefinite relative: .....

➤ Interrogative: *quot?*

**2/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the correlatives in italics:**

- *Aliquot* saeculis post P. Scipio bello Punico tertio Carthaginem cepit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Vide, quot* cyathos bibimus. *Tot quot* digiti sunt in manu (Plautus, *Stichus*). [cyathus = glass]
- *Quot* homines *tot* sententiae (Terentius Afer, *Phormio*).
- At studuit Catilinae, cum iam *aliquot* annos esset in foro, Caelius (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- *Quot* aratores adveniente te fuerunt agri Mutycensis? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

3/ Translate into Latin, using correlatives for the words in italics:

- *How many* soldiers has Brutus led to Rome?

.....

- He has brought only *some* soldiers.

.....

- *However many* soldiers you bring, Octavius will defeat you.

.....

- There are *as many* citizens in this city as in Rome.

.....

## THE VERBAL SYSTEM

### a) General observations

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. The tenses
3. The moods
4. The voices
5. Formation of tenses
6. Formation of moods
7. Types of verbs
8. Principal parts

### b) The four regular conjugations

1. The 1<sup>st</sup> conjugation
2. The 2<sup>nd</sup> conjugation
3. The 3<sup>rd</sup> conjugation
4. The 4<sup>th</sup> conjugation
5. The mixed conjugation

### c) The passive voice

1. Present-stem tenses
2. Perfect-stem tenses

### d) Deponent and semi-deponent verbs

1. Deponent verbs
2. Nominal forms in deponent verbs
3. Semi-deponent verbs
4. Passive deponent verbs

### e) Verb sum and its compounds

1. Verb *sum*
2. Compounds of *sum*
3. Verb *possum*
4. Verb *prosum*

### f) Irregular verbs

1. Verb *volo*
2. Verb *nolo*
3. Verb *malo*
4. Verb *eo* and its compounds
5. Verb *fero* and its compounds
6. Verb *edo*
7. Verb *fio*
8. Defective verbs

### g) Overview of peculiar constructions

1. Previous notes
2. Peculiar constructions

### h) Compound verbs

1. Compound verbs with *a/ab*
2. Compound verbs with *ad*  
... etc.

## a) General observations

### 1. (unapplied in this book)

### 2. The tenses

[50]

a/ What are the six tenses of Latin verbs, and what time does each one of them represent?

Tense	Time	Tense	Time
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....

b/ In the columns, list the tenses that are formed with a present-stem and a perfect stem:

Present-stem tenses	Perfect-stem tenses

### 3. The moods

[51]

Write the name of the six moods in Latin verbs and define the function of each:

Mood	Function
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

**4. The voices**

[52]

- ▷ How many voices are there in the Latin verbal system?

.....

- ▷ What are deponent verbs?

.....

**5. Formation of tenses**

[53]

- a/ Can you write the main characteristic for the formation of each tense in the indicative (for instance, adding this or that)?

For present: .....

For imperfect: .....

For future: .....

For perfect: .....

For pluperfect: .....

For future perfect: .....

- b/ Which is the only tense that has its own personal endings?

.....

- c/ In the passive voice, how are the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect formed?

— Perfect: .....

— Pluperfect: .....

— Future perfect: .....

**6. Formation of moods**

[54]

- ▷ Which two tenses does the indicative have that the subjunctive does not have?

.....

- ▷ Infinitive and participle: which is the noun and which is the adjective?
- .....

- ▷ In what composed way are some infinitives formed?
- .....

- ▷ How is the gerund formed?
- .....

- ▷ How many forms does the supine have?
- .....

## 7. Types of verbs

[55]

- ▷ Can you briefly say what the mixed conjugation is?
- .....

- ▷ What tenses are formed the same way, independently from their conjugation?
- .....

## 8. Principal parts

[56]

- ▷ What are the four principal parts of a verb?
- .....

- ▷ On which of these four parts are the present-stem tenses formed?
- .....

- ▷ On which of these four parts are the perfect-stem tenses formed?
- .....

- ▷ For what do we use the supine?
- .....

## b) The four regular conjugations

### 1. The 1<sup>st</sup> conjugation

[57]

#### a) Principal parts

- ▷ Write the principal parts of the regular verb *ambulo*, remembering that it belongs to the 1<sup>st</sup> conjugation:

.....

- ▷ Now write it with the three last forms shortened, as you would probably find it in a dictionary:

.....

#### b) Indicative and Subjunctive

- ▷ Write the personal endings used only for the perfect indicative: .....

.....

- ▷ Write the personal endings used for the rest of tenses: .....

.....

**1/ For each tense, write the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular and the 3<sup>rd</sup> plural for the verb *laboro, -are, -avi, -atum*:**

Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
<i>laboro</i>	-	-	-
<i>laborat</i>	-	-	-
<i>laborant</i>	-	-	-
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-
<i>Future</i>	<i>Future perfect</i>		
-	-		
-	-		
-	-		

2/ To what tense of the indicative is the perfect subjunctive almost identical?

.....

### c) Other moods

1/ Complete the table of participles (including the passive) for the same verb:

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
<b>Active</b>	laborans, -antis		
<b>Passive</b>			

2/ Complete the table of infinitives (including the passive ones) for the same verb:

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
<b>Active</b>	laborare		
<b>Passive</b>			

3/ Write the gerund and the supines for the same verb:

<i>Gerund</i>	<i>Supines</i>
-	-
-	-
-	-
-	-

### d) More questions

1/ Give the translation for these frequent verbs of the 1<sup>st</sup> conjugation (irregular forms given; otherwise, -o, -are, -avi, -atum):

laudo ..... adiuvo, adiuvi ..... neco .....

rogo ..... erro ..... dubito .....

servo ..... festino ..... impero .....

laboro	.....	voco	.....	do, dedi	.....
paro	.....	habito	.....	supero	.....
sto, steti	.....	appropinquuo	.....		
pugno	.....	cogito	.....		

2/ Identify these forms (mood, tense, person and number) of the verb dubito:

dubitavisti	.....	dubitandi	.....
dubitantem	.....	dubitatueros	.....
duvitavisse	.....	dubitatueros esse	.....
dubitatis	.....	dubitarent	.....
dubitavero	.....	dubitanda	.....
dubitabamus	.....	dubitavissemus	.....
dubites	.....	dubitari	.....
dubitabimus	.....		

## 2. The 2<sup>nd</sup> conjugation

[58]

a/ Write the present indicative and the present subjunctive for the verb habeo, -ere, habui, habitum and compare with those of the 1<sup>st</sup> conjugation:

Present indicative	Present subjunctive	What is the difference in the indicative?
-	-	.....
-	-	.....
-	-	.....
-	-	And in the subjunctive?
-	-	.....
-	-	.....
-	-	.....
-	-	.....

b/ Give the translation for these frequent verbs of the 2<sup>nd</sup> conjugation:

moneo, monui, monitum	.....	deleo, delevi, deletum	.....
doceo, docui, doctum	.....	habeo, habui, habitum	.....
timeo, timui, ----	.....	terreo, terrui, territum	.....
video, vidi, visum	.....	debeo, debui, debitum	.....
praebeo, praebui, praebitum	.....	iubeo, iussi, iussum	.....
teneo, tenui, ----	.....		

### 3. The 3<sup>rd</sup> conjugation

[59]

a/ For each tense, write the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular and the 3<sup>rd</sup> plural for the verb dico, -ere, dixi, dictum:

Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
dico	-	-	-
dicit	-	-	-
dicunt	-	-	-
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-
<i>Future</i>	<i>Future perfect</i>		
-	-		
-	-		
-	-		

b/ To which tense of the indicative is the form dicam identical?

.....

c/ Write the imperative of the same verb:

Singular: ..... Plural: .....

d/ Complete the table of participles (including the passive ones) for the same verb:

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
<b>Active</b>	dicens, -entis		
<b>Passive</b>			

e/ Complete the table of infinitives (including the passive ones) for the same verb:

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
<b>Active</b>	dicere		
<b>Passive</b>			

f/ Give the translation for these frequent verbs of the 3<sup>rd</sup> conjugation:

occido, occidi occisum	.....	reliquo, reliqui, relictum	.....
pello, pepuli, pulsum	.....	curro, cucurri, cursum	.....
peto, petivi, petitum	.....	discedo, discessi, discessum	.....
ago, egi, actum	.....	vinco, vici, victum	.....
cado, cecidi, ----	.....	credo, credidi, creditum	.....
mitto, misi, missum	.....	disco, didici, ----	.....
duco, duxi, ductum	.....	pono, posui, positum	.....
gero, gessi, gestum	.....	lego, legi, lectum	.....

g/ Identify these forms (tense, mood, person and number) of the verb duco, -ere, duxi, ductum:

duci	.....	ducendo	.....
duxeram	.....	ducebatis	.....
duxistis	.....	duxerim	.....

duxero	.....	duxisse	.....
ductum esse	.....	duxissem	.....
duces	.....	duceremus	.....
ducas	.....	ducite	.....
ductu	.....		

#### 4. The 4<sup>th</sup> conjugation

[60]

a/ What is the usual shortage for the principal parts of a verb of the 4<sup>th</sup> conjugation?

- o, - ....., - ....., - .....

b/ For each tense, write the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular and the 3<sup>rd</sup> plural for the verb punio, -ire, -ivi, -itum:

Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
punio	-	-	-
punit	-	-	-
puniunt	-	-	-
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-
<i>Future</i>	<i>Future perfect</i>		
-	-		
-	-		
-	-		

c/ Complete the table of participles (including the passive) for the same verb:

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
<b>Active</b>			
<b>Passive</b>			

d/ Give the translation for these frequent verbs of the 4<sup>th</sup> conjugation:

venio, veni, ventum .....	pervenio, perveni, perventum .....
punio .....	sentio, sensi, sensum .....
scio .....	dormio .....
nescio .....	invenio, inveni, inventum .....

## 5. The mixed conjugation

[61]

a/ How would you define the mixed conjugation?

.....

b/ What is its defining characteristic, and what does it make the verb look like?

.....

.....

c/ Complete the table of participles (including the passive ones) for the verb facio, -ere, feci, factum:

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
<b>Active</b>			
<b>Passive</b>			

d/ Write the present passive infinitive and the gerund for the same verb:

Present pass. inf.: .....

Gerund: Acc. .....

Gen. .....

Dat. .....

Abl. .....

e/ Indicative and subjunctive: For each present-stem tense, write the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular and the 3<sup>rd</sup> plural for the same verb:

Indicative	Subjunctive	
Present	Present	
facio	-	
facit	-	
faciunt	-	
Imperfect	Imperfect	▷ What is the peculiarity of the imperfect subjunctive with respect to the other tenses? ..... .....
-	-	
-	-	
-	-	
Future		
-		
-		
-		

f/ Translate these frequent verbs of the mixed conjugation: (observe that many of them are compounds)

incipio, incepi, incepum ..... suscipio, suscepi, susceptum .....

cupio, cupivi, cupitum ..... conspicio, conspeci, conspectum .....

facio, feci, factum ..... fugio, fugi, ---- .....

accipio, accepi, acceptum ..... iacio, ieci, iactum .....

interficio, interfeci, interfectum .....

### c) The passive voice

## 1. Present-stem tenses

[62]

a/ Provide the personal endings of the passive voice for present-stem tenses:

Active:    -o            -s            -t            -mus            -tis            -nt

Passive:    .....        .....        .....        .....        .....        .....

b/ Indicative and subjunctive: For each present-stem tense, write the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular passive and the 3<sup>rd</sup> plural passive for the verb impero, -are:

Indicative	Subjunctive	
Present	Present	
imperor	-	
imperatur	-	
imperantur	-	
Imperfect	Imperfect	In the future indicative, there is a little irregularity; what is it?
-	-	.....
-	-	.....
-	-	.....
Future		
-		
-		
-		

c/ Write the same tenses and persons for the verb **mitto, -ere, 3<sup>rd</sup> conjugation**, and **cupio, -ere, 3<sup>rd</sup> mixed**:

Indicative	Subjunctive	Indicative	Subjunctive
Present	Present	Present	Present
mittor	-	cupior	-
mittitur	-	cupitur	-
mittuntur	-	cupiuntur	-
<hr/> <i>Imperfect</i>		<hr/> <i>Imperfect</i>	
-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-
<hr/> <i>Future</i>		<hr/> <i>Future</i>	
-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-
-	-	-	-

▷ Where is now the same type of irregularity for the verb **mitto** as there was for **impero** above?

.....

d/ Write the imperative passive for **cupio, -ere**:

Singular: ..... Plural: .....

▷ What does the singular imperative look like? .....

e/ Identify these forms (tense, mood, person and number) of the verb **duco, -ere, duxi, ductum**:

duceris	.....	ducuntur	.....
ducerer	.....	ducimur	.....
ducere	.....	ducamur	.....
ducar	.....	ducimini	.....
ducebamur	.....	ducentur	.....

f/ Rewrite these sentences in the passive voice, keeping the meaning:

- Milites delent pontem.

.....

- Magister monebat discipulos.

.....

- Librum scribam cras.

.....

- Exercitus suum ducem laudat.

.....

- Milites aedificabunt urbem.

.....

g/ Read these sentences:

- L. Lentulus *comprehenditur ab rege et in custodia necatur* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Totius exercitus clamor *audiebatur* (Curtius Rufus, *Historiae Alexandri Magni*).
- Magnus numerus [militum] *capitur atque interficitur* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Spernitur orator bonus, horridus miles amatetur* (Ennius, *Annales*).
- *Improbi iudicio ac periculo liberabuntur* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

## 2. Perfect-stem tenses

[63]

a/ Write the passive perfect-stem tenses for the indicative and subjunctive for the verb *mitto*, -ere, misi, missum:

Indicative	Subjunctive
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
missus, -a, -um + sum, es, est	-
missi, -ae, -a + sumus, estis, sunt	-
<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
-	-
-	-
<i>Future Perfect</i>	-
-	-
-	-

b/ What does *Consul auditus est* mean?

- 1/ THE CONSUL HAS BEEN HEARD.    2/ THE CONSUL IS BEING HEARD.    3/ THE CONSUL WAS BEING HEARD.

c/ Combine the words correctly, changing whatever must be changed, so that the sentences mean what the translation says:

- Epistula ..... THE LETTER HAD BEEN RECEIVED.  
[receptus, -a, -um + form of sum]
- Milites ..... THE SOLDIERS WILL HAVE BEEN KILLED.  
[interfectus, -a, -um + form of sum]
- Fur ..... THE THIEF HAS BEEN PUNISHED.  
[punitus, -a, -um + form of sum]

d/ Rewrite these sentences in the passive voice keeping the meaning:

- Senatores necaverunt Caesarem.

.....

- Octavius vicit hostes in proelio.

.....

- Cives regem ex urbe expulerunt.

.....

- Cicero omnia haec gessit.

.....

e/ Read these sentences:

- Ab eo senatus *laudatus est* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).

- *Laudata est* pro rostris a G. Caesare (Tacitus, *Annales*).

- *Capti sunt* fortissimi duces (Seneca senior, *Controversiae*).

- Duae filiae: harum altera *occisa*, altera *capta est* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

- In radicibus montis urbi sedes *electa est* (Curtius Rufus, *Historiae Alexandri Magni*).

## d) Deponent and semi-deponent verbs

### 1. Deponent verbs

[64]

a/ How would you define a deponent verb?

.....

b/ Are deponent verbs introduced in the dictionary with active or passive forms?

.....

c/ Match each verb with its meaning:

TO BE BORN / TO DIE / TO CONFESS / TO ACQUIRE / TO TRY / TO BE ANGRY / TO SET OUT / TO FOLLOW / TO PERSECUTE / TO CONTINUE / TO APPROACH

persequor, persecui, persecutus sum	.....	nascor, nasci, natus sum	.....
aggredior, aggredi, aggressus sum	.....	consequor, consequi, consecutus sum	.....
moriō, mori, mortuus sum	.....	prosequor, prosequi, prosecutus sum	.....
proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum	.....	conor, -ari, -atus sum	.....
fateor, fateri, fassus sum	.....	irascor, irasci, iratus sum	.....
potior, potiri, potitus sum	.....		

TO GO OUT / TO THINK / TO SUFFER / TO PROMISE / TO USE / TO URGE / TO RETURN / TO ADMIRE / TO FEAR / TO ADVANCE / TO ENTER / TO FORGET / TO SPEAK

progredior, progredi, progressus sum	.....	regredior, regredi, regressus sum	.....
reor, reri, ratus sum	.....	miror, mirari, miratus sum	.....
patior, pati, passus sum	.....	egredior, egredi, egressus sum	.....
loquor, loqui, locutus sum	.....	ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum	.....
polliceor, polliceri, pollicitus sum	.....	vereor, vereri, veritus sum	.....
utor, uti, usus sum	.....	obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum	.....
hortor, hortari, hortatus sum	.....		

d/ Read these sentences; deponent verbs are in italics:

- De eius fama ac pudicitia nemo *loquebatur* (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- *Utebatur* hominibus improbis multis (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- Surrexit ornatissimeque de meo consulatu *locutus est* (Cicero, *Ad Atticum*).
- Caesar eum ad sanitatem *reverti* arbitrabatur (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Itaque mulier *passa est* frangi pertinaciam suam (Petronius, *Satyricon*).
- *Usus est* miles ingenio prudentissimae feminae (Petronius, *Satyricon*).
- Unum iam reliquum diem *lamentabantur* (Tacitus, *Annales*).

e/ Write the necessary deponent verbal form adapting it from one of the verbs from the list; if there is a subject, it has been underlined:

*ingredior / proficiscor / patior / ulciscor / prosequor / auxilior / utor*

- Prius tamen omnia [to bear] ..... decrevit quam bellum sumere (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Neque mihi Micipsae patris mei beneficia neque vostra decreta [help] ..... (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Igitur Calpurnius acriter Numidiam [entered] ..... (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Sociis vostris veluti hostibus, hostibus pro sociis [they use] ..... (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Cassius praetor ad Iugurtham [sets out] ..... (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Caesar non solum publicas sed etiam privatas iniurias [avenged] ..... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- In conditorum etiam [she followed] ..... defunctum (Petronius, *Satyricon*).

## 2. Nominal forms in deponent verbs

[65]

a/ Fill in the table with infinitives for the verb *miror, -ari, -atus sum* and translate each infinitive, making clear whether it has active or passive meaning:

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
<b>Active</b>			
<b>Passive</b>			

b/ Fill in the table with participles for the verb *miror, -ari, -atus sum* and translate each participle, making clear whether it has active or passive meaning:

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
<b>Active</b>			
<b>Passive</b>			

▷ As a final summary: in infinitives and participles, which are the three forms that look active?

.....

▷ And what is the only deponent form that is passive in meaning?

.....

c/ Complete these sentences, choosing one of the forms from the list:

*adgressus / fretus / ingredi / cohortatus / sequi / secuti / ratus / conantes / complexus*

- [Confident in] ..... *vestra prudentia, iudices, non pertimesco* (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- *Iugurtha, certum esse* [thinking] ..... *quod ex amicis apud Numantiam acceperat, ...* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

- Eos impeditos et inopinantes [having attacked] ..... magnam partem eorum concidit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Omnem classem se [to follow] ..... iussit (anon., *Bellum Alexandrinum*).
- Diviciacus multis cum lagrimis Caesarem [embracing] ..... obsecrare coepit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris [having followed] ..... impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Quod iter incipiam [to enter] ..... ? (Ennius, *tragoediae*).
- Milites oratione [having exhorted] ..... proelii commitendi signum dedit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Milites, transire [trying] ..... insecuri gladiis magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

### 3. Semi-deponent verbs

[66]

a/ What is a semi-deponent verb?

.....  
.....

b/ The verb fio, fieri, factus sum can be considered a semi-deponent verb, but it has a little anomaly as such. What is this anomaly?

.....

c/ Give the translation for these frequent semi-deponent verbs:

soleo, -ere, solitus sum .....

gaudeo, -ere, gavisus sum .....

confido, -ere, confisus sum .....

d/ Complete these sentences choosing a form from the given list:

gavisus sum / solitus est / soliti sunt / solebat / confisus sum / solebat

- [He used to (perfect)] ..... ei persaepe dicere ... (Cicero, *De Oratore*).
- Rubrius haec investigare omnia [he used to (imperf.)] ..... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

- Cognita morte C. Treboni non plus [I rejoiced] ..... quam dolui (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- In hac officina maiorem partem diei sedere [he used to (imperf.)] ..... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Verum nec hoc [I trusted] ..... posse fieri (Cicero, *Rhetorica ad Herennium*).
- Eum locum libenter invisit, ubi Demosthenes et Aeschines inter se decertare [they used to] ..... (Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*).

## 4. Passive deponent verbs

[67]

a/ What are passive deponent verbs?

b/ Give the meaning of these verbs:

vapulo ..... exulo ..... veneo .....

c/ Complete these sentences choosing a form from the given list:

*exulatum / vapulem / exulat / venisse / exulat / vapula / vapulare / exulare*

- Nunc profecto [be flogged!] ..... ob mendacium (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- Ubi innocens damnatur, pars patriae [is sent into exile] ..... (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae*).
- Obsecro ut per pacem liceat te alloqui, ut ne [I may be flogged] ..... (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- Mori atque [be sent into exile] ..... nobilissimos viros honoratissimosque passi sumus (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- Tu quid potes, miser, nisi [to be flogged] ..... ? (Fabius Quintilianus, *Declamationes Minores*).
- Meministi tibi me dudum dicere, eam [was sold] ..... militi Macedonio? (Plautus, *Pseudolus*).
- — Quo nunc ibas? — [Into exile] ..... (Plautus, *Mercator*).
- Quisquis non [is sent into exile] ..... hic est (Lucanus, *Bellum Civile*).

**e) Verb sum and its compounds****1. Verb sum**

[68]

**a/ Write these tenses for the indicative:**

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future</i>
-	-	-
-	-	-
-	-	-
-	-	-
-	-	-
-	-	-

**b/ And these tenses for the subjunctive:**

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
-	-
-	-
-	-
-	-
-	-

**c/ What is the only participle that this verb has?**

.....

**d/ What is an alternative form for its future participle?**

.....

**e/ Read these sentences:**

- In ipso senatu me *futurum esse* consulem prima illa mea oratione Kalendis Ianuariis dixi (Cicero, *De Lege Agraria*).
- Quoniam suspicaretur aliqua de re *fore* controversiam, ... (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Vos o mihi, Manes, *este boni* (Virgil, *Aeneis*).
- Bono animo *este*, inquit Agrius (Varro, *Res Rusticae*).
- ... , ostenditque nec stare potuisse rem publicam si ego non *fuissem*, nec *futuram esse* ullam si non redissem (Cicero, *De Domo Sua*) ⇔ Cicero was really a mountain of modesty...

**2. Compounds of sum**

[69]

**a/ Link these compounds of sum with their meanings:**

TO SURVIVE / TO BE AT THE FRONT / TO BE LACKING / TO OPPOSE / TO BE IN THE MIDDLE / TO BE INSIDE / TO BE ABSENT / TO SUPPORT

obsum	.....	desum	.....	praesum	.....
intersum	.....	supersum	.....	insum	.....
adsum	.....	absum	.....		

**b/ Read these sentences:**

- Cum domus patris a foro longe *abesset*, ... (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Arioventi et Caesaris *aberat* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Qui in Numidia relicti a Bestia exercitui *praeerant* facinora fecere (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Tanta vis *inerat* in verbis ... (Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*).
- Secuti sumus classem Dolabellae, cui L. Figulus *praerat* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- Omnibus rebus eruptis solum mihi *superest* animus et corpus (Cicero, *Rhetorica ad Herennium*).

**c/ Now complete these sentences choosing one of the options from the list:***deerat / interesse / intererat / obest / supererat*

- Me tamen doleo non [intervene] ..... huic bello (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- Nihil enim [remained] ..... de quo certarent (Cicero, *De Lege Agraria*).

- Quis ergo [was in the middle of] ..... *vestris consiliis?* (Cicero, *Pro Sulla*).
- Domus tibi [was missing] .....? At habebas (Cicero, *Pro Scauro*).
- Quod dicturus sum puto **equidem** non valde ad rem pertinere, sed tamen nihil [opposes] ..... dicere (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

d/ Translate into Latin using a compound of *sum* for the expressions in italics:

- We *supported* Caesar for the consulship.

.....

- *Is Octavius in?* Please, tell him that *I am here*. I hope *he is not absent*.

.....

- Only three soldiers *survived*.

.....

- Five books *are missing* from the library.

.....

### 3. Verb **possum**

[70]

a/ Write the present indicative in full:

.....

.....

b/ Write the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular for each tense:

#### Indicative

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
<i>possum</i>	-
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
-	-
<i>Future</i>	<i>Fut. perfect</i>
-	-

#### Subjunctive

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
-	-
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
-	-

c/ Complete these sentences choosing one of the options from the list; when there is a subject for the verb, it has been italicized:

*potes / posse / potest / poterunt / potero / potest / potuisse*

- *Qui hoc intellegi [is able] .....? (Cicero, Pro Quinctio).*
- *Res in dubium venire non [it can] ..... (Cicero, Pro Quinctio).*
- *Negare non [they will not be able] ..... (Cicero, In Verrem).*
- *Tu id semper facis, quia semper [you can] ..... ego in hac causa faciam, propterea quod in hac videor [to be able] ..... facere (Cicero, Pro Quinctio).*
- *Ex edicto autem non [could not] ..... bona possideri demonstravi (Cicero, Pro Quinctio).*
- *Contra hominum auctoritatem pugnare non [I will be able] ..... (Cicero, In Verrem).*

d/ Translate into Latin:

- *Can you see him?*
- .....

- *Tomorrow I will not be able to go to Rome.*
- .....

- *I could not defeat him.*
- .....

- *Children want to be able to read mythological fables.*
- .....

## 4. Verb prosum

[71]

a/ Write the present indicative in full:

.....      .....

.....      .....

b/ Write only the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular for each tense:

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present	Perfect	Present	Perfect
prosum	-	-	-
Imperfect	Pluperfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect
-	-	-	-
Future	Fut. perfect		
-	-		

c/ Read these sentences:

- Quid, inquam, prodest fundum habere? (Cicero, *Pro Caecina*).
- Quid proderit, inquit, hoc tibi? (Petronius, *Satyricon*).
- Nihilne igitur prodest oratori iuris civilis scientia? (Cicero, *De Oratore*).
- Accusavit Antonium, conlegam meum, cui misero praetuli in rem publicam benefici memoria nihil profuit (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).

◇

- Id quod scis prodest nihil; id quod nescis obest? (Cicero, *Orator*).
- Illud enim semel profuit, hoc semper proderit civitati (Cicero, *De Officiis*).
- Multum prodest ea, quae metuntur, ipsa contemnere (Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes*).
- Fac igitur, mi Rex, ut intellegat has sibi litteras plurimum profuisse (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

d/ Translate into Latin using the verb prosum:

- This is of no use to me.

.....

- This victory will be of much use to Rome.

.....

- I think that these books will be of much use to the students.

.....

- Killing the senator was of no use to the province.

.....

## f) Irregular verbs

### 1. Verb **volo**

[72]

a/ Write the present indicative in full:

.....  
.....

b/ Write only the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular for each tense:

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present	Perfect	Present	Perfect
volo	-	-	-
Imperfect	Pluperfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect
-	-	-	-
Future	Fut. perfect		
-	-		

c/ Choose the correct form; when there is a subject for the chosen form, it has been italicized:

volui / vult / vis / voluisse / vis / velle / vult / velle

- [want] ..... *tu* reviviscere? (Petronius, *Satyricon*).
- Nunc iam *illa* non [wants] ..... (Catullus, *Carmina*).
- Nunc quod *me* dixi [to want] ..... vobis dicere, dicam (Plautus, *Asinaria*).
- *Ego te* [wanted] ..... castigare (Plautus, *Aulularia*).
- Te *nemo* tuorum videre [wants] ..... (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*).
- Iste ait *se* [to want] ..... illud etiam atque etiam considerare (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Quid [you want] ..... fieri? (Plautus, *Aulularia*).
- *Deos* credo [to have wanted] ..... (Plautus, *Aulularia*).

**d/ Translate into Latin:**

- Do you *want* to come with us?
- .....

- I *wanted* to see him, but I could not.
- .....

- Everybody *wants* to be happy.
- .....

- Will he *want* to destroy Rome?
- .....

- If you *had wanted* to do this, you would have done it.
- .....

**2. Verb *nolo***

[73]

**a/ Write the present indicative in full:**

.....  
.....

**b/ Write only the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular for each tense:**

Indicative	Subjunctive
<i>Present</i> <i>nolo</i>	<i>Present</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
<i>Future</i>	<i>Fut. perfect</i>

c/ Choose the correct form; when there is a subject for the chosen form, it has been italicized:

*noluit / nolunt / nolle / noluisse / nolle / noluit / noli / nolunt*

- Ego quidem arbitror *Ridienses* [not to have wanted] ..... nos ita depugnare, uti depugnatum est (Cato, *Orationes*).
- Scio *te* id [not to want] ..... fieri (Plautus, *Captivi*).
- *Caesar* eodem itinere uti [did not want] ..... (Anonymous, *Bellum Alexandrinum*).
- Audire de *te* [they do not want] ..... (Cicero, *In Vatinium*).
- [Do not] ..... igitur fortunam convertere in culpam (Cicero, *Pro Rabirio Postumo*).
- Si *Carpinatius* mihi tum respondere [did not want] ..... , responde tu mihi nunc, Verres (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Populus non curat, *principes* [do not want] ..... , ego quiesco (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Quintum Fratrem*).
- [not to want] ..... *se* negoti quicquam habere dicebat (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

d/ Translate into Latin:

- *Do not* read this book!
- .....

- He *does not* want to fight.
- .....

- If he *had not wanted* to write this book, he would not have written it.
- .....

- He *did not want* to run, but I persuaded him.
- .....

### 3. Verb **malo**

[74]

a/ Write the present indicative in full:

.....      .....

.....      .....

b/ Write only the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular for each tense:

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present	Perfect	Present	Perfect
malo	-	-	-
Imperfect	Pluperfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect
-	-	-	-
Future	Fut. perfect		
-	-		

c/ Choose the correct form:

*maluissem / mavis / malebat / malet / mavis / malle / mavis*

- Utrum te perfidiosum an prevaricatorem existimari [do you prefer] ..... ?  
(Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*).
- Semel perire tamen, iudices, [I would have preferred] ..... quam bis vincere (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*).
- Cum, inquit, vomere post cenam te velle dixisses, in balneum te ducere coeperunt: ibi enim erant insidiae. At te eadem tua fortuna servavit: in cubiculo [to prefer] ..... dixisti (Cicero, *Pro Rege Deiotaro*).
- Sis licet felix, ubicumque [you prefer] ..... (Horace, *Carmina*).
- [He preferred] ..... pecuniam accipere (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Utrum igitur [you prefer] ..... ? (Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes*).
- [He will prefer] ..... existimari bonus vir, ut non sit, quam esse, ut non putetur  
(Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*).

d/ Translate into Latin:

- I prefer to remain here rather than going to the city.

.....

- What did they prefer?

.....

- If he *had preferred* this book, he would have taken it.
- .....

- We *would prefer* to do this.
- .....

#### 4. Verb **eo** and its compounds

[75]

- a/ Write the present indicative in full:
- .....  
.....  
.....

- b/ Write only the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular for each tense:

Indicative

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
<i>eo</i>	-
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
-	-
<i>Future</i>	<i>Fut. perfect</i>
-	-

Subjunctive

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
-	-
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
-	-

- c/ Fill in the box of participles:

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Future</i>
<i>Active</i>			
<i>Passive</i>			

- d/ What is its gerund accusative?
- .....

**e/ Match each compound of eo with its meaning:**

TO GO BACK / TO CROSS / TO GO TO MEET / TO GO OUT / TO DIE / TO GO IN THE FIRST POSITION / TO GO AWAY / TO ENTER / TO APPROACH / TO GO AROUND

obeo	.....	redeo	.....
pereo	.....	transeo	.....
ineo	.....	adeo	.....
praeleo	.....	circumeo	.....
abeo	.....	exeo	.....

**f/ Read these sentences:**

- Hodie in urbem non *redibit* (Plautus, *Casina*).
- Heus, *abit*. Quin revocas? (Plautus, *Pseudolus*).
- Hoc in mare *abit* misereque *perit* (Plautus, *Truculentus*).
- *Transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Posteaquam Verres magistratum *iniit*, ... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Ille in candida veste *praeibat* (Curtius Rufus, *Historiae Alexandri Magni*).

◊

- Post eam victoriam damnatus a populo Atheniensi in vinculis publicis mortem *abit* (Gellius, *Noctes Atticae*).
- Unde *exit* haec? (Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus*).
- M. Marcellus, qui ter consul fuit, *periit* in mari (Cicero, *In Pisonem*).
- Vidi *exeuntem* mulierem (Plautus, *Cistellaria*).
- Noctu flumen *transit* atque in eadem partem, ex qua venerat, *redit* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Fortes viri proelium *ineunt* (Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*).

**g/ Choose the correct form; in some cases, the word to which the form is somehow related has been italicized:**

*periit* / *adire* / *ineunte* / *exeunte* / *adit* / *redeuntes* / *adit*

- Semper ego usque ad hanc aetatem ab [beginning] ..... adulescentia tuis servivi (Plautus, *Trinummus*).
- [Coming back] ..... equites quos possunt *consectantur* atque occidunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

- *Nolite hospites ad me* [to approach] ..... (Ennius, *Tragoediae*).
- [He approaches] ..... *ad Dionem et ait* ... (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- *Tertio post die senatum* [he approaches] ..... ; *gratulatus victoriam est* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- *Repentina morte* [he died] ..... (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- *Quinto autem anno* [finishing] ..... , ... (Cicero, *De Divinatione*).

## 5. Verb **fero** and its compounds

[76]

a/ Write the present indicative in full:

.....      .....

.....      .....

b/ Write only the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular for each tense:

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present	Perfect	Present	Perfect
<i>fero</i>			
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
<i>Future</i>	<i>Fut. perfect</i>		

c/ Match these compounds of *fero* with their meanings:

TO REMOVE / TO PUT TOGETHER / TO OFFER / TO PRESENT / TO PUT FORWARD / TO BRING BACK / TO BEAR / TO TAKE OUT / TO TAKE INTO

<i>profero</i> .....	<i>aufero</i> .....	<i>suffero</i> .....
<i>refero</i> .....	<i>offerо</i> .....	<i>confero</i> .....
<i>infero</i> .....	<i>praefero</i> .....	<i>effero</i> .....

**d/ Read these sentences:**

- Ut opinio mea *fert*, ... (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- Ea dona, quae illic Amphitruoni sunt data, *abstulimus* (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- Per optimos viros optimis civibus periculum *inferre* conantur (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*).
- Multa praeterea spolia *praeferebantur* (Caesar, *De Bellum Civile*).
- Manus ad caelum *sustulit* suas rex Amulius (Naevius, *Bellum Punicum*).
- ... comitia ista *praeclara* quae me laetitia *extulerunt* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- Milites alius alium laeti appellant, sua quisque fortia facta ad caelum *fert* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

**e/ Choose the correct option from the list:**

*conferunt / sustulerit / retuli / praeferebat / tulerunt / auferre / extuli*

- Sinistra manu retinebat arcum, dextra ardente facem [he carried in front] ..... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Pacem inter sese conciliant, [they bring together] ..... concordiam (Ennius, *Tragoediae*).
- Quid tu [to take away] ..... potes a Flavio, si Flavius nihil debet? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).
- Iam quae iste signa, quas tabulas pictas ex Achaia [he took away] ....., non dicam hoc loco (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Itaque, Quirites, cum Romam profectus sum, zonas, quas plenas argenti [I took out] ....., eas ex provincia inanes [I brought back] ..... ; alii vini amphoras quas plenas [they brought] ..... , eas argento repletas domum reportaverunt (Sempronius Gracchus, *Orationes*).

**6. Verb edo**

[77]

**a/ Write the requested forms:**

❖ Principal parts: ..... .... .....

❖ Present indicative in full, including the optional forms:

Regular: ..... .... .....

Optional: ..... .... .....

b/ What are the two possible present infinitives of *edo*? .....

c/ Choose the correct option from the list:

*edemus / edentem / edunt / edimus / edim*

- Quas herbas pecudes non [they eat] ..... , homines edunt (Plautus, *Pseudolus*).
- Irascere, si te [while you eat] ..... hic a cibo abigat (Plautus, *Curculio*).
- Quasi mures semper [we eat] ..... alienum cibum (Plautus, *Captivi*).
- Quid tu curas, utrum crudum an coctum ego [I eat] ..... ? (Plautus, *Aulularia*).
- Quid [we will eat] ..... nosmet postea? (Plautus, *Trinummus*).

## 7. Verb *fio*

[78]

a/ Write the present indicative in full:

.....  
.....

b/ Write only the 1<sup>st</sup> person singular for each tense:

### Indicative

Present	<i>Perfect</i>
<i>fio</i>	
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
<i>Future</i>	<i>Fut. perfect</i>

### Subjunctive

<i>Present</i>	<i>Perfect</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>

c/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the different ways of translating the forms of the verb *fio*:

- Labienus, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetum fieret, nostros exspectabat (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Quid *fis* deinde? Porro loquere (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).

- *Haec omnia eius rei causa fiunt* (Porcius Cato, *De Agri Cultura*).
- *Duabus portis ab utroque latere turrium eruptio fiebat* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

d/ Choose the correct option:

*fit / fieri / fient / fit / fieri*

- *Vix videtur* [to happen] ..... *posse* (Plautus, *Bacchides*).
- *Hoc idem* [happens] ..... *in reliquis civitatibus* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Scio te id nolle* [to take place] ..... (Plautus, *Captivi*).
- *Omnibus locis* [takes place] ..... *caedes* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Hodie* [will take place] ..... *nuptiae* (Plautus, *Curculio*).

e/ Translate into Latin using the correct form of the verb *fio* for the words in italics:

- Caesar *has been appointed* consul.

.....

- What *is happening* here?

.....

- The battle *will take place* near Rome.

.....

- It cannot *be* that the enemy always wins!

.....

- By reading, we *become* wiser.

.....

## 8. Defective verbs

[79]

a/ Give the meaning for these frequent defective verbs:

coepi ..... odi ..... novi ..... memini .....

b/ Of these four verbs, which is the only one that has a perfect meaning?

.....

c/ Novi is in fact the perfect tense of another verb; which one?

.....

d/ Give the meaning for these other defective verbs:

inquam ..... aio ..... quaeſo .....

queo ..... nequeo .....

e/ Read these sentences:

- Habuit enim ille, sicuti *meminisse* vos arbitror, ... (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- *Quaeso* ut eum diem memoriae mandetis (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Sed tamen hoc *queo* dicere (Cicero, *Cato Maior de Senectute*).
- Litteras *ait se misisse* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Quis Pullum, proditorem, quamquam rei publicae nostrae profuit, non *odit*? (Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*).
- Tum ad eos is deus, qui omnia genuit, *fatur*: "Haec ..." (Cicero, *Timaeus*).
- Verum *nequeo* dormire (Horace, *Sermones*).

f/ Complete the following sentences, choosing one option from the list for each:

*novit / quaeso / novi / inquam / nequeo / coepit / queo*

- Non enim [I know] ..... nec scio (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Bellum gerere [he began] ..... (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

- Te vero, M. Scaure, equidem video, video, [I say] ..... , non cogito solum (Cicero, *Pro Rabirio Postumo*).
- Illud vero quid sit iam non [I can] ..... dicere (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Recita mihi, [please] ..... , hunc primum libellum, deinde illum alterum (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- [I can not] ..... hercle equidem risu meo moderari (Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus*).
- Leges nostras moresve [does he know] ..... ? (Cicero, *Philippicae*).

g/ Translate into Latin using defective verbs:

- Do you *remember* that man?

.....

- Yesterday they *began* to build a bridge.

.....

- I do not *know* that consul.

.....

- I *can't* run, I am tired.

.....

## g) Overview of peculiar constructions

### 1. Previous notes

[80]

In this section you will find a series of sentences in which the verb presents some peculiarity in the way it is used (ruling the unexpected case, or ruling this or that construction, etc.), and a lot of times the meaning of the verb will depend on what construction, case, etc. it rules in that sentence. The verb to be observed has been italicized.

The purpose should be not only to read and understand each sentence but also to pay close attention to the construction used and the meaning of the verb with that construction. Sometimes only one sentence exemplifies some usage, and in other cases more than one sentence is used.

### 2. Peculiar constructions

[81]

#### a) Single examples

- ❖ In this section, the construction of some verbs is illustrated by just one sentence.
- Atque ita censuerunt ut P. Lentulus, cum se praetura *abdicasset*, in custodiam traderetur (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).
- Quamquam abest a culpa, suspicione tamen non *caret* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Eos sine consili sententia sua sponte omni suppicio *liberavit* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Hoc quoque te *manet* (Horace, *Epistulae*).
- Q. Titurius ... interpres suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum *mittit* rogatum ut sibi militibusque parcat (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Haec statim *nupsit* alio marito (Quintilianus, *Declamationes Minores*).
- Scelere se *obligavit* (Seneca iunior, *Dialogi*).
- ..., cum *periit* ab Hannibale, ... (Plinius Secundus, *Naturalis Historia*).
- *Persuasum est* animis cum gente Tarquinia regnum hinc abiturum [esse] (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- Non igitur patria *praestat* omnibus officiis? (Cicero, *De Officiis*).
- Quis maiorem partem populi suffragiis *prohibuit?* (Cicero, *De Lege Agraria*).
- *Ridebat* contumaciam Giton (Petronius, *Satyricon*).

- Non enim suo iudicio *stetit* (Cicero, *De Officiis*).
- At *studuit* Catilinae, cum iam aliquot annos esset in foro, Caelius (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- De re publica valde *timeo* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).

### b) Multiple examples

❖ In this section more than one example has been offered for the same verb so that the difference of constructions and of meanings of that verb may be observed. Sentences dealing with the same verb have been grouped.

- Huic ego causae, iudices, cum summa voluntate et exspectatione populi Romani actor *accessi* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Cum ad urbem *accessisset*, ... (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

◊

- ... iam pridem de manibus arma *cecidissent* (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Si aliquid ex eius ore *cecedit*, ... (Cicero, *De Divinatione*).
- Non deficiam, ne omnia mea culpa *cecidisse* videantur (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

◊

- Qui tantum facinus *commiserunt* non modo sine cura quiescere sed ne spirare quidem sine metu possunt (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Tum iste negat se de existimatione sua cuiquam nisi suis *commissurum [esse]* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

◊

- Haud tibi hoc *concedo* (Terentius Afer, *Hecyra*).
- Me multum errasse *concedo* (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Ecce me. Num te fugi? ... Num oculis *concessi* tuis? (Plautus, *Epidicus*).

◊

- Cui salutem suam *credidit?* (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- Qui roganti non *credidit*, morienti *credat* (Fabius Quintilianus, *Declamationes Minores*).

◊

- Illud *doleo*, in ista loca venire me ... non potuisse (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

- Atticam doleo tam diu (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- De Attica doleo (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- De Cossinio doleo; dilexi hominem (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).

◊

- Milites conlaudat totumque exercitum veteranum donavit (anon., *Bellum Africum*).
- Me praeda donavit (Cicero, *Pro Murena*).
- Mihi populus Romanus ... aeternitatem immortalitatemque donavit (Cicero, *In Pisonem*).

◊

- Non me fugit, iudices, vetera exempla pro fictis fabulis iam audiri (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
  - Praedonum impetum fugiebant (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- ◊
- Gaudeo nostra iura ad naturam accommodari (Cicero, *De Legibus*).
  - Gaudeo quod te interpellavi (Cicero, *De Legibus*).

◊

- His de rebus non necesse habeo dicere ea quae ... (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Ego servum habeo nullum (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Te habeo aequissimum eorum studiorum, quae mihi communia tecum sunt, existimatorem et iudicem (Cicero, *De Finibus*).

◊

- Non ego in video commodis tuis (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
  - Illi qui honori inviderunt meo ... (Cicero, *De Lege Agraria*).
  - Tum Antonius "ego vero ita fecisset," inquit "nisi interdum in hoc Crasso paulum inviderem" (Cicero, *De Oratore*).
- ◊
- Hoc patri minaris, viro promittis (Seneca senior, *Controversiae*).
  - Omnibus omnia minabatur (Cicero, *Pro Milone*).



- *Negavit quemquam esse in civitate praeter se qui id efficere posset* (Cicero, *Pro Cluentio*).
- *Negavit se triumphi cupidum umquam fuisse* (Cicero, *In Pisonem*).



- *Placitum est ut quam primum ad urbem reverteretur Cn. Pompeius* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- *Placitum est mihi ... ut Brundisium ducerem hanc copiam* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- *His placuit ut tu in Cumanum venires* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).



- *Suam vitam ut legem *praefert* suis civibus* (Cicero, *De Republica*).
  - *Hunc Afranius quidem omnibus comicis *praefert** (Suetonius, *De Poetis*).
- 
- *Sequitur ut doceam omnia subiecta esse naturae* (Cicero, *De Natura Deorum*).
  - *Necessario sequitur omnes sapientes semper feliciter, absolute, fortunatae vivere* (Cicero, *De Finibus*).

## h) Compound verbs

### 1. Compound verbs with a/ab

[82]

#### a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:

TO DIMINISH / TO REFRAIN FROM / TO BE ABSENT / TO CONCEAL / TO LEAD AWAY / TO GO ASTRAY / TO TAKE AWAY / TO TEAR OFF / TO KILL / TO TURN AWAY

abstineo .....	aufero .....	abduco .....
abripio .....	abdo .....	aberro .....
abscindo .....	absum .....	
averto .....	absumo .....	

#### b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:

- Domum se *abdidit* (Cicero, *In Pisonem*).

.....        .....

- *Abducite hunc intro* (Plautus, *Bacchides*).

.....        .....

- Ego *abeo*, mihi negotium est (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).

.....        .....

- ... tunicamque eius a pectore *abscidit* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

.....        .....



- Ne malum habeat, *abstinet* se ab iniuria (Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*).

.....        .....

- Quia te servavi, me *amisisti* liberum (Plautus, *Menaechmi*).

.....        .....

- Plus tibi virtus tua dedit quam fortuna *abstulit* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- .....

- Pompeius ab inimicis Caesaris incitatus totum se ab eius amicitia *averterat* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- .....

c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of a/ab:

- Marcus [refrained] ..... a sceleribus.
- Reges aliquando [abdicate] .....
- Celeriter nuntios [I turned away] .....
- In silva multas horas [we went astray] .....

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of a/ab:

- Who *has removed* the money?
- .....

- I *sent him away*.
- .....

- She *departed* yesterday.
- .....

- Where have you *hidden* the food?
- .....

## 2. Compound verbs with ad

[83]

a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:

TO TAKE AWAY / TO ACHIEVE / TO APPROACH / TO HAPPEN / TO ATTACH / TO REACH / TO COME TO Maturity / TO STRIVE FOR / TO ARRIVE / TO RECOGNISE / TO BRING IN

adolesco	.....	adimo	.....	appeto	.....
accido	.....	appello	.....	advenio	.....
addo	.....	accedo	.....	agnosco	.....
attingo	.....	adipiscor	.....		

b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:

- Ille naufragus ad gubernaculum *accessit* (Cicero, *De Inventione*).

..... .... .....

- Nihil mali *accidisse* Scipioni puto (Cicero, *Laelius de Amicitia*).

..... .... .....

- Non vox mea tibi vitam *ademi?* (Cicero, *Rhetorica ad Herennium*).

..... .... .....

- Cupiditas agendi aliquid *adolescit* una cum aetatibus (Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*).

..... .... .....



- *Agnosco* veteris vestigia flammae (Vergil, *Aeneis*).

..... .... .....

- Hinc me digressum vestris deus *appulit* oris (Vergil, *Aeneis*).

..... .... .....

- Quod ad me *attinuit*, ego curavi (Plautus, *Epidicus*).

..... .... .....

- Cn. Pompeius captis Hierosolymis vitor ex illo fano nihil *attigit* (Cicero, *Pro Flacco*).

..... .... .....

c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of ad:

- Quid [happened] ..... tibi?
- Hic nuntius mihi laetitiam [has taken away] .....
- Omnes naves [they brought to land] .....
- Hoc ad me non [concerns] .....

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of ad:

- When have you *arrived*?

.....

- I *obtained (achieved)* twenty more books for the school.

.....

- I *will assign* this task to him.

.....

- He did not want to *help* me.

.....

### 3. Compound verbs with ante and circum

[84]

a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:

TO GO BEFORE / TO ENCOMPASS / TO BEND / TO POUR AROUND / TO LOOK AROUND / TO TAKE BEFORE / TO PLACE AROUND / TO STAND AROUND

circumspecto .....

circumdo .....

circumfundō .....

circumsto .....

circumflecto .....

circumscribo .....

anticipo .....

antecedo .....

b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:

- Vercingetorix re cognita magnis itineribus *antecessit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

..... .....

- *Antetulit* irae religionem (Nepos, *Vitae*).

..... .....

- Cum legati Romani venissent ac multitudine domum eius *circumdedisset*, ... (Nepos, *Vitae*).

..... .....

- Properans venit: nescioquid *circumspectat* (Terentius Afer, *Eunuchus*).

..... .....

- Ab iis qui proximi steterant *circumveniebantur* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

..... .....

c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of ante or circum:

- Hoc audito, quam celeriter [I encircled] ..... oppidum.
- Ego semper [prefer] ..... amicitiam pecuniae.
- Cum primum veni, omnia [I looked around] .....
- Multos milites dux [poured around] .....

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of ante or circum:

- I carried the students around the walls.

.....

- In the celebration, Caesar always preceded.

.....

- We surrounded his house.

.....

- Wait, I want to look around.

.....

#### 4. Compound verbs with cum

[85]

a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:

TO CONFINE / TO THREATEN / TO ASSEMBLE (trans.) / TO UNITE / TO GO TOGETHER / TO BECOME ACQUAINTED WITH / TO PERPETRATE / TO TARRY / TO STIR / TO FIND OUT / TO PERISH / TO ASSEMBLE (intrans.) / TO DELIBERATE / TO COMPLETE / TO FOUND / TO OBSERVE / TO ACCUSTOM ONESELF / TO CONFESS / TO FIGHT / TO ENDURE / TO USE UP

commoror	.....	comperio	.....	consulo	.....
consumo	.....	concido	.....	coalesco	.....
commoveo	.....	confiteor	.....	comminor	.....
compello	.....	configo	.....	concurro	.....
coeo	.....	consisto	.....	condo	.....
cognosco	.....	conspicio	.....	conficio	.....
cohibeo	.....	consuesco	.....	committo	.....

b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:

- Populares tumultus et ortos gravissime *coercuit* (Suetonius, *De Vita Caesarum*).

.....

- *Collegit* innumerabilia oracula Chrysippus (Cicero, *De Divinatione*).

.....

- *Adiuncti* verbi prima littera *prae*positionem *commutavit* (Cicero, *Orator*).

.....

- Rex cum hoc itinere venire Caesarem *comperisset*, ... (anon., *Bellum Alexandrinum*).

.....

- Dico a lictoribus tuis civem Romanum ante oculos tuos *concidisse* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

.....

- Post illud bellum quod M. Aquilius *confecit*, ... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

.....



- *Confligi* atque hominem reppuli (Plautus, *Bacchides*).

.....

- Haec procella equestris primo *confudit* et turbavit, deinde dissipavit aciem Gallorum (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

.....

- Conantes dicere prohibuit et in catenas *coniecit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

.....

- Ipse ad ancoram una nocte *constitit* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

.....

- Ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare *consuevit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

.....

- Frumentum quod in agris erat *convexit* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

.....

c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of cum:

- Meis amicis semper [I go together] .....
- Ego [gathered] ..... multam pecuniam.
- Omnia opera [she completed] .....
- Hoc facere [I agreed to] ..... , quamquam iniustum erat.

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of cum:

- The soldiers *have consumed* all the food.

.....

- Our allies *yielded* quickly.

.....

- He *confessed* having killed the senator.

.....

- They *disordered* the legions of the enemy.

## 5. Compound verbs with de

[86]

a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:

TO FALL DOWN / TO SNATCH / TO TEAR OFF / TO LEAP DOWN / TO ALLOW / TO BE INATTENTIVE / TO REVOLT / TO DEPART / TO DECIDE / TO GIVE UP / TO THROW DOWN / TO REMOVE / TO DRIVE OUT / TO DEFEAT COMPLETELY

delabor	.....	deripio	.....	decerno	.....
demoveo	.....	desilio	.....	dedo	.....
deficio	.....	decedo	.....	deicio	.....
devinco	.....	depello	.....	desino	.....
deprehendo	.....	despicio	.....		

b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:

- Cum Verres iam de provincia *decessisset*, ... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

.....

- Maxima pars Aquitaniae sese Crasso *dedidit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

.....

- Is iurare cum *coepisset*, vox eum *defecit* in illo loco (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

.....

- Fortassis tu auri *dempsti* parum? (Plautus, *Bacchides*).

.....

- Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis *desiliunt* ac pedibus proeliantur (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

.....

- Mox Tiberium variis artibus *devinxit* (Tacitus, *Annales*).

.....

c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of de:

- Quis pecuniam [removed] .....
- Ex equo [he leapt down] .....
- Noli me [to deter] .....
- Caesar Gallos [defeated completely] .....

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of de:

- We wanted to *depart* in the morning.

.....

- They *surrendered* themselves to the Romans.

.....

- We never *abandon* our allies.

.....

- When I saw this, I *despaired*.

.....

**6. Compound verbs with e/ex**

[87]

**a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:**

TO POUR OUT / TO CAST OUT / TO EXTRICATE / TO GO OUT / TO LEAD OUT / TO LIE / TO SNATCH AWAY / TO ESCAPE / TO COMPLETE / TO WORK /  
 TO DEMAND / TO FALL OUT / TO CARRY OUT / TO TAKE OUT / TO ARISE / TO STEP OUT

ementior	.....	eicio	.....	exo	.....
eveho	.....	elabor	.....	exerceo	.....
excipio	.....	eripio	.....	exigo	.....
educo	.....	evado	.....	exsisto	.....
efficio	.....	exorior	.....		
effundo	.....	expedio	.....		

**b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:**

- Vos, vos appello, fortissimi viri, qui multum pro re publica sanguinem *effudistis* (Cicero, *Pro Milone*).

.....                         .....                         .....                         .....

- Terror hominibus mentem consiliumque *eripit* (anon., *Bellum Alexandrinum*).

.....                         .....                         .....                         .....

- Et vos acta Caesaris defenditis qui leges eius *evertitis*? (Cicero, *Philippicae*).

.....                         .....                         .....                         .....

- Magnum rursus odium video cum crudelissimo discidio *exstitisse* (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).

.....                         .....                         .....                         .....

- ... , ibique iuventutem suam *exercuit* (Sallustius, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

.....                         .....                         .....                         .....

- Atque etiam iudicium in praetura publicum *exercuit* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

.....                         .....                         .....                         .....

**c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of e/ex:**

- Debemus nunc [to go out] .....

- Semper [he lies] ..... , numquam veritatem dicit.

- Discipulos e ludo [I led out] .....
- His curis me [he released] .....
- Mihi victores [snatched] ..... libertatem.

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of e/ex:

- We *examined* the place with extreme care.

.....

- I *reckon* that he is a good senator.

.....

- We *dragged* him *out* of the temple.

.....

- They *expel/ed* the traitor out of the city.

.....

## 7. Compound verbs with in

[88]

a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:

TO HINDER / TO INTRODUCE / TO RUSH IN / TO EXAMINE / TO URGE / TO EXPEND / TO FALL IN / TO RESTRAIN / TO DWELL / TO PERSUADE / TO AIM TO / TO BE IMMINENT / TO ENVY / TO RISE UP / TO DRIVE FORWARD

insurgo .....

infero .....

incolo .....

intendo .....

inhibeo .....

inruo .....

invideo .....

incido .....

impedio .....

impendo .....

impello .....

inspicio .....

induco .....

impendeo .....

insto .....

b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:

- Haec te opinio falsa in istam fraudem *impulit* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

..... .....

- Nefarium bellum et crudele *intulisti* (Cicero, *In Pisonem*).

..... .....

- ... poscentesque pugnam milites a seditione *inhibuit* (Livy, *Periochae Librorum*).
- .....

- Iurat et simul dextram *intendit* ad statuam (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- .....

c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of in:

- Romae Caesar pacem [imposed] .....
- Tres annos in Gallia [he dwelled] .....
- Libros quos perdidisti [have you found] ..... ?
- Nuntium in senatum [they introduced] .....

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of in:

- I do not want to *intermingle* in your affairs.
- .....

- The battle was *imminent*.
- .....

- After the battle, we *began* to pick up the corpses.
- .....

- The enemy *set* the city *on fire*.
- .....

## 8. Compound verbs with inter

[89]

a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:

TO FORBID / TO DIE / TO UNDERSTAND / TO INTERCEDE / TO SHUT OFF / TO BE BETWEEN / TO FALL / TO KILL / TO INTERPOSE

interficio .....

intercedo .....

intercludo .....

interpono .....

intercidio .....

interdico .....

intellego .....

interereo .....

intersum .....

b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:

- Semper sensi, filio meo te esse amicum, et illum *intellexi* tibi (Plautus, *Captivi*).

.....

- Omnibus *interfui* proeliis neque temere incognitam rem pronuntio (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

.....

- Omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas *interiit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

.....

- Beatusne igitur, qui hos *interfecit*? (Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes*).

.....

- ... *interdicitque* omnibus ne quemquam *interficiant* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

.....

- Ego tamen istos abire ex regno iussi et in perpetuum *interdixi* finibus meis (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

.....

- Omnia mutantur, nihil *interit* (Ovid, *Metamorphoses*).

.....

c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of inter:

- [I understood] ..... quid Caesar dixisset.

- Hostes [killed] ..... omnes cives.

- Eum de hoc [they asked] .....

- Semper se [he interposed] .....

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of inter:

- I understand that you are a good general.

.....

- He is always present in the senate.

.....

- He *intercepted* my letter.
- .....

- They *will die* in the battle.
- .....

## 9. Compound verbs with *ob*

[90]

### a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:

TO GO TO MEET / TO RUN TO MEET / TO POUR OUT / TO PRESENT / TO DELIGHT / TO OVERWHELM / TO OPPOSE / TO ENTREAT / TO BESIEGE / TO TURN AGAINST / TO KILL

obsecro .....	obsisto .....	oblecto .....
obsideo .....	offundo .....	obruo .....
occurro .....	obverto .....	offerо .....
obeо .....	occido .....	

### b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:

- Nonne tertio et tricesimo anno mortem *obii?* (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- .....

- Ego meum saepe corpus et vitam *obieci* armis inimicorum tuorum (Cicero, *Pro Milone*).
- .....

- Ipse ad extremum pro mea vos salute non rogavit solum verum etiam *obsecravit* (Cicero, *Post Reditum ad Populum*).
- .....

- Scipioni *obvenit* Syria, L. Domitio Gallia (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- .....

- Domitius Caesar venienti *occurrat* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- .....

### c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of *ob*:

- Heri meo patri [I ran to meet] .....
- Novi consules cives [subdued] .....

- Quinque menses [they besieged] ..... Tarentum.
- Me multum [delighted] ..... his donis.

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of ob:

- He met death in the battle.

.....

- Armed men hindered us.

.....

- We compelled them to go to Rome.

.....

- The prisoners entreated Caesar not to destroy the city.

.....

## 10. Compound verbs with per

[91]

a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:

TO UNDERSTAND / TO LOOK THROUGH / TO PERSEVERE / TO HANDLE / TO COMPLETE / TO MOVE DEEPLY / TO CROSS / TO ARRIVE / TO DESIRE  
COMPLETELY / TO RESIST / TO PAY / TO DESTROY / TO DIE

pervenio .....

percipio .....

pertracto .....

perspicio .....

perverto .....

pervado .....

permoveo .....

permaneo .....

perficio .....

persolvo .....

pereo .....

pervolo .....

persto .....

b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:

- Id nos fortasse non perfecimus, conati quidem saepissime sumus (Cicero, *Orator*).

..... .....

- Perfeci ut e regno ille discederet (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

..... .....

- Vultum enim qui permutat, fraudem parat (Petronius, *Satyricon*).

..... .....

- Croesus Halyn penetrans magnam *pervertet* opum vim, hostium vim se *perversurum* putavit, *pervertit* autem suam (Cicero, *De Divinatione*).
- ..... . . . . .

c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of per:

- [I realised] ..... de his rebus te loqui.
- Non fugit, sed Romae [he resisted] ..... diu.
- Diem [I have wasted] ..... . [Who said this?]
- Hi libri ad magistrum [belong] .....

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of per:

- I have completed the task.
- .....

- The soldiers are pursuing the senators.
- .....

- This news moved me deeply.
- .....

- The guard remained awake the whole night.
- .....

## 11. Compound verbs with *prae* and *praeter*

[92]

a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:

TO INSTRUCT / TO SHUT OFF / TO PRECEDE / TO PUT IN COMMAND OF / TO SNATCH AWAY / TO STAND OUT / TO GO BY / TO REACH OUT / TO SEND FORWARD / TO FORTIFY / TO FORESEE / TO OFFER

*praeripio* .....

*praeficio* .....

*praetendo* .....

*praesto* .....

*praemitto* .....

*praevideo* .....

*praecludo* .....

*praetereo* .....

*praebeo* .....

*praeeo* .....

*praecipo* .....

*praemunio* .....

b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:

- Me a portu *praemisit* domum (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).

.....

- Cohortes eiecit portasque *praeclusit* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

.....

- Hibernis Labienum *praeposuit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

.....

- Nos hodie inter alias *praestitimus* pulchritudine (Plautus, *Poenulus*).

.....

- Multi floruerunt apud Graecos, sed Phalereus Demetrius meo iudicio *praestitit* ceteris (Cicero, *Orator*).

.....

- *Praeteriit* villam meam Curio iussitque mihi ... (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).

.....

- Pater tuus nobis maria *praclusit* (Seneca senior, *Controversiae*).

.....

c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of prae or praeter:

- Te legioni [I will put in front] .....

.....

- Civibus [he offered] ..... multam pecuniam.

.....

- Inter omnes milites [excels] ..... hic homo.

.....

- Miserae uxori [he snatched away] ..... maritum et filium.

.....

- The consul *will shut off* the city to the conspirators.

.....

- The general *preceded* the army.

.....

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of prae or praeter:

- The senate *put* Marcus *in front of* the army.
- .....

- Yesterday I *went by* your house.
- .....

## 12. Compound verbs with pro

[93]

### a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:

TO PROCEED / TO BRING FORTH / TO PUT FORTH / TO LEAD FORWARD / TO BENEFIT / TO FORESEE / TO STIR UP / TO CONFESS / TO THROW FORTH / TO LOOK FORWARD

proicio	.....	provideo	.....	profero	.....
prodo	.....	provoco	.....	procedo	.....
profiteor	.....	produco	.....		
prospicio	.....	prosum	.....		

### b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:

- Is certe neque classem *prodidit* neque metu perterritus fugit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- .....

- Et quoniam *huc me provexit* oratio, ... (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*).
- .....

- ... epistulamque ostendens se regem *professus est* quaerere (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- .....

- Quis te *prohibuit*? (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- .....

- Tum vidi ac multo ante *prospexi* quanta tempestas excitaretur (Cicero, *De Haruspicum Responso*).
- .....

- Hoc cum voce magna dixisset, se ex navi *projecit* atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- .....

c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of pro:

- Proditores numquam patriae [benefit] .....
- Hoc dicto, exercitum [to proceed] ..... iussit.
- Mali cives [have been proscribed] .....
- In iudicio illas litteras [he brought forward] .....

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of pro:

- He *proclaimed* that his son had won.

.....

- I could not *foresee* the defeat.

.....

- They *confessed* having sent that letter.

.....

- I *followed* him up to the door.

.....

### 13. Compound verbs with sub

[94]

a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:

TO UNDERMINE / TO ASSIGN / TO COME TO HELP / TO OVERTURN / TO RUN TO HELP / TO TAKE UP / TO ADMIRE / TO REMOVE SECRETLY / TO APPROACH / TO RAISE UP / TO RESIST

subvenio .....

subsisto .....

subeo .....

suffudio .....

subverto .....

suscipio .....

suggero .....

succurro .....

suspicio .....

sublevo .....

subduco .....

b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:

- Quis in meum locum iudicem *subdidit*? (Cicero, *De Domo Sua*).

.....                        .....

- Huc septem Aeneas collectis navibus omni ex numero *subit* (Vergil, *Aeneis*).

..... .... .....

- Urbes partim spe, partim metu, partim vi *subigit* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

..... .... .....

- Causam Siculorum quam *suscepi* relinqu (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

..... .... .....

- Tullus impetum legionis *sustinuit* cohortibus tribus (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

..... .... .....

c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of sub:

- Montem [he approached] ..... exercitum dicens.
- Hic dux omnem terram [he submitted] .....
- Cicero multa iudicia [took up] .....
- In limine portae [he stood still] .....

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of sub:

- I ran to *help* them.

.....

- I *will take up* all these tasks.

.....

- He *removed* the treasure secretly.

.....

- They will not be able to *resist* any more.

.....

## 14. Compound verbs with super and trans

[95]

### a/ Match these verbs with their meanings:

TO PERVERSE / TO PIERCE THROUGH / TO SEND OVER / TO THROW OVER / TO CARRY OVER / TO STAND OVER / TO SURVIVE / TO TRANSLATE / TO RUN ACROSS

transeo	.....	transveho	.....	transcurro	.....
transfigo	.....	supersum	.....	superiacio	.....
supersto	.....	traduco	.....	transmitto	.....

### b/ Read these sentences and write the main parts for the compound verb used in them:

- Essedis carrisque *superstans* armatus hostis advenit (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

.....                         .....                         .....                         .....

- Praeter castra Caesaris suas copias *traduxit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

.....                         .....                         .....                         .....

- Peregrinos deos *transtulimus* Romam et instituimus novos (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

.....                         .....                         .....                         .....

- Saggita Cupido cor meum *transfixit* (Plautus, *Persa*).

.....                         .....                         .....                         .....

- Postea quam angustias paludis et silvarum *transiimus*, acies est instructa a nobis (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

.....                         .....                         .....                         .....

- Hac ergo mente Hellespontum copias *traiecit* (Nepos, *Vitae*).

.....                         .....                         .....                         .....

### c/ Complete these sentences using compound verbs of super or trans:

- Decet nobis aliquas legiones navibus [to transport] .....
- Alto tumulo eum [standing over] ..... et loquentem vidi.
- Solum quinque milites [survived] .....
- Paludem et vallem [we crossed] ..... . [use transgredior]

d/ Translate into Latin using compound verbs of super or trans:

- Achilles *pierced* the soldier's shield.

.....

- They *carried* one thousand soldiers *over*.

.....

- In summer we *crossed* the mountains. [use transeo]

.....

- We *ran across* the forum as quickly as possible.

.....

---

## SYNTAX OF CASES

### a) Use of cases

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Nominative
3. Vocative
4. Accusative
5. Genitive
6. Dative
7. Ablative

### b) Prepositions

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Prepositions of one case
3. Prepositions of two cases

### c) Expressions of time and place

1. Expressions of time
2. Expressions of place

### d) Regime of verbs and adjectives

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Verbs that rule a given case
3. Adjectives followed by a given case

### a) Use of cases

#### 1. (unapplied in this book)

#### 2. Nominative

[96]

a/ Read these sentences and underline all the nominatives:

- Dux atque imperator vitae mortalium animus est (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Masinissa, rex Numidarum, in amicitiam receptus a P. Scipione, multa et praeclera rei militaris facinora fecerat (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Castra hostium apud Sucronem capta et proelium apud flumen Durium et dux hostium C. Herennius cum urbe Valentia et exercitu deleti satis clara vobis sunt (Sallust, *Fragmenta Ampliora*).

b/ Translate into Latin using nominatives where necessary:

- Caesar was appointed general.
- .....

- This man is considered very wise.
- .....

- What is happening?
- .....

- Pompeius, the best general of the legions, was Caesar's enemy.
- .....

#### 3. Vocative

[97]

a/ Complete these sentences by adding the vocative of the given words:

- Volo, ..... fraterculo tuo credas (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [meus frater]
- Cum dico me, te, ...., dico (Cicero, *Orator*). [Brutus]
- Laudo, inquit, te, ..... (A. Gellius, *Noctes Atticae*). [meus filius]
- ..... , salve (Plautus, *Bacchides*). [bonus servus]

**b/ Examine this sentence:** Puere, nemo hic habitat (Plautus, *Mostellaria*).

Plautus wrote the way he wanted. What would have been the right form instead of *puere*? .....

**c/ Translate into Latin using vocatives where necessary:**

- My dear friend, come here.
- .....

- Give me this, my little daughter.
- .....

- Quintus, my son, read this book, please.
- .....

#### 4. Accusative

[98]

**a/ Read these sentences, underline the accusatives and specify what kind of syntactical function each accusative plays:**

- Postero die castra ex eo loco movent (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- .....

- Te suas amicas rogavit rursum ut ageres (Terentius Afer, *Phormio*).
- .....

- Me saucium recreavit, me praeda donavit (Cicero, *Pro Murena*).
- .....

- Si quid haberem quod ad te scriberem, facerem id (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*)
- .....

- Fuimus una horas duas fortasse (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- .....

**b/ For each sentence, complete it by adding the accusative of the given words. Find also the other accusatives (if any) and specify what kind of syntactical function each accusative plays:**

- ..... Q. Catulus, princeps huius ordinis et auctor publici consili, frequentissimo senatu ..... patriae nominavit (Cicero, *In Pisonem*). [ego] [parens]
- .....

- Hostes sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris ..... ponit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [castra]  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....
  - Certior factus est Arioosti ..... a nostris milia passuum quattuor et viginti abesse  
(Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [copiae]  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....
  - Diebus XXV ..... latum pedes CCCXXX, altum pedes LXXX exstruxerunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [agger]  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....
  - In Hispaniam ..... ac ..... misit ad eos duces quibuscum tum ..... gerebamus  
(Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*). [legati] [litterae] [bellum]  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....
- ◊
- O .....! (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*). [res incredibilis]  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....
  - Constituimus inter nos ut ..... conficeremus in Academia, maxime quod is locus ab omni turba id temporis vacuus esset (Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*). [ambulatio postmeridiana]  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....
  - Huius fulta, rapinas, ..... crudelitatem, superbiam, ..... tegere conaris?  
(Cicero, *In Verrem*). [cupiditas] [scelus] [audacia]  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....
  - Genus est eius belli quod maxime ..... excitare atque inflammare ad persequendi studium debeat (Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*). [vestri animi]  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....
  - Mithridates autem omne reliquum ..... non ad oblivionem veteris belli sed ad comparationem novi contulit  
(Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*). [tempus]  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

c/ Out of any of the former exercises, find an example of:

- accusative of extension: .....
- accusative direct object: .....
- accusative exclamative: .....
- accusative subject of an infinitive: .....
- double accusative: .....

d/ Translate into Latin using accusatives:

❖ In some sentences you may need to put more than one element in the accusative.

- The wall was eight feet tall.

.....

- In the first place, I will speak about this.

.....

- Poor me!

.....

- The soldiers fought for two hours and then walked for ten miles.

.....

- I consider him a good friend.

.....

- They asked food from Caesar.

.....

## 5. Genitive

[99]

a/ Read these sentences, point out the genitives and specify what kind of syntactical function each genitive plays:

- *Quanti te emit?* (Plautus, *Pseudolus*).

.....

- *Urbem totam templaque deorum omnisque Italiae partis illorum donis ac monumentis exornatas videmus* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

.....

- Equites nostri cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
.....

- Quid mihi sit boni, si mentiar? (Plautus, *Mostellaria*).  
.....

- P. Sextius Baculus et item C. Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam adcurrunt atque unam esse spem salutis docent (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
.....

b/ For each sentence, complete it by adding the genitive of the given words. Find also the other genitives (if any) and specify what kind of syntactical function each genitive plays:

- ... cum ipse a Demosthene esset ..... accusatus (Cicero, *De Optimo Genere Oratorum*). [caput]  
.....

- Pro ..... que fidem! (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*). [deus] [homines]  
.....

- Dic ergo ..... censes? (Plautus, *Rudens*). [quantum]  
.....

- Credo hercle te gaudere, si quid mihi ..... est (Plautus, *Trinummus*). [malum]  
.....

- Non enim ..... auditum aestimabit (Cicero, *De Inventione*). [parvum]  
.....

- Metuo ne id ..... ceperimus quod non facile explicare possimus (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*). [consilium]  
.....



- Haud scio an plerique nostrorum ..... ingenio plus valuerint quam doctrina (Cicero, *Orator*). [oratores]  
.....

- Si iam satis ..... ac ..... haberet, ipse pro Sex. Roscio diceret  
(Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [aetas] [robur]  
.....

- Non est ..... iniurias meminisse (Cicero, *Post Reditum in Senatu*). [meum tempus]
  
- Est quidem ille plenus ..... (Cicero, *De Haruspicum Responso*). [vinum]
  
- Imminent duo reges ..... non solum vobis inimicissimi sed etiam vestris sociis atque amicis (Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*). [tota Asia]
  
- Nihil ergo illis profuisset divinare; atque etiam omnem fructum ..... perdidissent (Cicero, *De Divinatione*). [vita superior]

c/ Out of any of the former exercises, find an example of:

- genitive of value: .....
- possessive genitive: .....
- genitive partitive: .....
- adjective with genitive: .....
- judicial genitive: .....
- verb with genitive: .....

d/ Translate into Latin using genitives:

- I have a chest full of gold.

.....

- Have you seen the senator's brother?

.....

- Have you got enough food?

.....

- The Gauls killed most of the Roman soldiers.

.....

- My students value my books at very little.
- .....

- This writer is a man of great wisdom.
- .....

## 6. Dative

[100]

a/ Read these sentences, point out the datives and specify what kind of syntactical function each dative plays:

- Quaeso, quid mihi tecum est? (Plautus, *Menaechmi*).
- .....

- Stipendum aliaque, quae bello usui forent, decernuntur (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- .....

- Etiam nunc timetis eos, quibus decet terrori esse (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- .....

- Cum hominem nomino, satis mihi videor dicere (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- .....

- Honesta atque inhonesta omnia quaestui sunt (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- .....

- Una erat magno usui res praeparata a nostris (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- .....

b/ For each sentence, complete it by adding the dative of the given words. Find also the other datives (if any) and specify what kind of syntactical function each dative plays:

- Caesar duas ibi legiones ..... relinquit (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*). [praesidium]
- .....

- Quid nomen ..... est? (Plautus, *Amphitruo*). [tu]
- .....

- Quod ..... natura dat ut semper possis, id ..... causa concedit ut hodie possim  
(Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [tu] [ego]
- .....

- ..... filiam suam in matrimonium dat (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [is]
- ..... .....

- Veniant , si modo ..... est otium, et si volunt. [ei]
- ..... .....



- Legendus ..... saepius est 'Cato maior' ad te missus (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*). [ego]
- ..... .....

- Quid ..... divinatio prodest? [milites]
- ..... .....

- Hic ..... in rostra Cato advolat (Cicero, *Ad Atticum*). [tu]
- ..... .....

- Hanc rem tibi certo scio ..... esse (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*). [gaudium]
- ..... .....

- ..... conscriptis et bonis ..... parui (Cicero, *Pro Sulla*). [patres] [omnes]
- ..... .....



- Nunc ego, iudices, iam vos consul o quid ..... faciendum esse putetis. [senatus]
- ..... .....

- Quid ..... fiet postea? [meus frater]
- ..... .....

- Sunt ..... bis septem praestanti corpore Nymphae (Vergil, *Aeneis*). [ego]
- ..... .....

- Dixit amicitiam populi Romani ..... et praesidio, non ..... esse oportere (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [se] [ornamentum] [detrimentum]
- ..... .....

c/ From the previous exercises, find an example of:

- possessive dative: .....
- dative of purpose: .....
- dative of interest: .....
- verb with dative: .....
- dative indirect object: .....
- dative subject of passive periphrastic: .....

d/ Translate into Latin using datives where necessary:

- My brother has twenty horses. [use possessive dative]

.....

- I will leave three legions as protection for the camp.

.....

- In my opinion, he is a great orator.

.....

- Cicero was an example for all orators.

.....

- Tell him the news.

.....

- This city must be captured by you.

.....

## 7. Ablative

[101]

a/ Read these sentences, point out the ablatives and specify what kind of syntactical function each ablative has:

- Ceteri metu perculti a periculis aberant (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).  
.....

- Servos sine consilii sententia sua sponte omni supplicio liberavit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).  
.....

.....

- Quamquam abest a culpa, suspicione tamen non caret (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).  
.....
- Damnetur is qui fabricatus gladium est et vendidit, non is qui illo gladio civem aliquem interemit (Cicero, *Pro Rabirio Postumo*).  
.....
- L. Catilina, nobili genere natus, fuit magna vi et animi et corporis, sed ingenio malo pravoque (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).  
.....
- Et dignitate fuit honesta et viribus ad laborem ferendum firmis neque tam magno corpore quam figura venusta (Nepos, *Vitae*).  
.....

b/ Complete each sentence by adding the ablative of the given words, identify any other ablatives and specify what kind of syntactical function they may have:

- Filium suum ..... privavit (Cicero, *Pro Sulla*). [vita]  
.....
  - Spes facta est proditionis; nec sane ..... nummis aureis quadringentis (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [magnum pretium]  
.....
  - Non ..... differunt, ut Terentius ab Accio, sed in eodem genere non sunt pares (Cicero, *De Optimo Genere Oratorum*). [genus]  
.....
  - Viri boni descendunt ..... ac ..... coacti (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*). [vis] [necessitas]  
.....
- ◇
- Si vi deieci M. Claudium, ..... deieci (Cicero, *Pro Tullio*). [dolum malum]  
.....
  - Sed ..... erit gratius si reliqua voletis attendere (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [multum]  
.....

- Sed quid ego ..... utor? (Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*). [hi testes]
- .....

- Sed ego nondum utor ..... ad hunc defendendum (Cicero, *Pro Sulla*). [haec vox]
- .....

◊

- Adeone ..... abundat ut is qui ex Asia fugere dicebatur Europam appetere conetur?  
(Cicero, *Epistulae ad Brutum*). [copiae]
- .....

- Haec omnia pro salute omnium ..... , una mente atque ..... gesserunt  
(Cicero, *Pro Flacco*). [commune consilium] [virtus]
- .....

- Nonnullae ..... deperierant naves (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [tempestas]
- .....

- ..... suis Orgetorigem ex vincis causam dicere coegerunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [mores]
- .....

c/ From the previous exercises, find an example of:

— adverbial ablative: .....

— verb with ablative: .....

— ablative of price: .....

— ablative of separation: .....

— ablative of respect: .....

— instrumental ablative: .....

**d/ Translate into Latin using ablatives where necessary:**

- They will take the city either by force or by means of a deceit.

.....

- Sicily is abundant in corn.

.....

- I always use a spear in battle.

.....

- It will be much better if you tell me the truth.

.....

- I do not want to buy this wine for ten sestertii.

.....



- We did not want to enter the house because of fear.

.....

- Catilina was a man of great corpulence.

.....

- Caesar achieved everything with a sword.

.....

- Please, do not deprive me of my food.

.....

- This man lacks money.

.....

- Aeneas was born from a goddess.

.....

## b) Prepositions

### 1. (unapplied in this book)

### 2. Prepositions of one case

[102]

#### a) Prepositions followed by the accusative

1/ Choose the correct meaning for each preposition in these simple phrases:

ad Italiam	BEFORE / AFTER / TO
ante pugnam	THROUGH / BEFORE / BETWEEN
apud Gallos	AMONG / FROM / BECAUSE OF
circum urbem	IN POWER OF / AROUND / FROM
erga cives	TOWARDS / BECAUSE OF / BETWEEN



inter milites	BEFORE / AMONG / WITH
ob bellum	BEFORE / AFTER / BECAUSE OF
penes Graecos	IN THE HANDS OF / BEFORE / AROUND
per oppidum	OUTSIDE / THROUGH / BECAUSE OF
post victoriam	BEYOND / AFTER / BECAUSE OF
praeter moenia	ALONG / OUTSIDE / BEFORE
trans rivum	BETWEEN / IN FRONT OF / BEYOND

2/ Translate these phrases:

Around the camp .....

Beyond those mountains .....

Through the fields .....

At Caesar's house .....

With respect to his friends .....

Among the students .....



Because of the defeat	.....
In the hands (power) of Octavius	.....
Along the river	.....
After Pompeius' death	.....
Towards the city	.....
Before the war	.....

3/ Complete the sentences by writing the given word in the accusative; remember that a preposition may have a different meaning in English:

▷▷ **ad**

- Quinctius configuit ad C. Flaccum ..... (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [imperator]
- Ad te ..... venimus (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [iudex]
- Nihil id quidem ad ..... . (Cicero, *Philippicae*). [res]
- Caecina cum amicis ad ..... venit in castellum Axiam (Cicero, *Pro Caecina*). [dies]

▷▷ **ante**

- Alterum incredibile est, alterum nefarium, et ante hoc ..... utrumque inauditum (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [tempus]
- Decem dies sunt ante ..... votivos, quos Cn. Pompeius facturus est (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [ludi]
- Ante ..... noctis de foro non discedit (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [hora tertia]

▷▷ **apud**

- Quantum prudentia praestiterint eis qui apud ..... sapientissimi fuisse dicuntur considerate (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [ceteri]
- Sed quid ego ineptus de Roscio apud ..... dico? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*). [Piso]
- Maiore etiam, si fieri potest, apud ..... odio esse debet quam est apud populum Romanum (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [vos]

▷▷ **circum**

- Ducebat eos circum ..... . (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [civitates]
- Plenum est forum, plena templa circum ..... (Cicero, *In Catilinam*). [forum]
- Eos autem qui circum ..... stabant audire nolebat (Cicero, *Pro Sulla*). [iudicium]

▷▷ **erga**

- Ut eam voluntatem quam semper habuistis erga ..... retineatis peto (Cicero, *De Lege Agraria*). [ego]
- Eorum benivolentiam erga ..... diligentiamque conlaudat (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [se]
- Suam erga ..... benivolentiam et fidem non solum animi dolore sed etiam corporis vulneribus ostendit (Cicero, *Post Reditum in Senatu*). [ego]

▷▷ **inter**

- At quid interest inter perjurum et .....? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*). [mendax]
- Illud tamen inter ..... gravissimum est (Fabius Quintilianus, *Declamationes Minores*). [omnia]
- Inter ..... unus se occidit et sepultus est in monumentis maiorum (Fabius Quintilianus, *Declamationes Minores*). [morae]

▷▷ **ob**

- Quam ob .....? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [causa]
- Quam ob ..... non ego invideo commodis tuis (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [res]
- Tibi ob eam ..... statuam in meis aedibus posuit (Cicero, *De Domo Suā*). [lex]

▷▷ **penes**

- Erat penes ..... tota res publica (Cicero, *De Republica*). [principes]
- Imperium Graeciae fuit penes ..... . (Cicero, *Rhetorica ad Herennium*). [Athenienses]
- Numquam mecastor reperies tu istuc probrum penes ..... (Plautus, *Poenulus*). [nos]

▷▷ **per**

- Hoc quod per ..... istius in Gallia gestum est recte atque ordine factum esse videtur (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [litterae]
- Nam, per ..... immortalis! (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [dei]
- Obsecravit per fratris sui mortui ..... per nomen propinquitatis, per ipsius ..... et liberos (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [cinis] [coniux]

▷▷ **post**

- Quando? Post ..... XXX (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [dies]
- Unus adhuc fuit post ..... cui res publica totam se traderet (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [Roma condita]
- ... nubilem filiam quae brevi tempore post patris ..... nupsit A. Aurio Melino (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*). [mors]
- Deinde item arcessitus est L. Statilius et post ..... Cethegus (Cicero, *In Catilinam*). [is]

▷▷ **praeter**

- Cum ei natura nihil melius quam vocem dedisset, pater nihil praeter ..... reliquisset, ... (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [libertas]
- Servi autem eius praeter ..... Lolli haec omnia ferebant (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [oculi]
- Hoc quis ante te, quis praeter ..... fecerit quaero (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [tu]

▷▷ **trans**

- Ego autem eo ipso tempore trans ..... fui (Cicero, *De Inventione*). [mare]
- Fidelissimus socius trans ..... amicissimusque populo Romano existimatur (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*). [Taurus, a mountain]
- Proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans ..... incolunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [Rhenum]

## 4/ Choose the correct preposition for each sentence:

- Venis e Gallia ..... quaesturam petendam (Cicero, *Philippicae*). [erga / ad / penes]
- Certius est ire ..... singula (Fabius Quintilianus, *Institutio Oratoria*).  
[☞ Do not try to do everything at once.] [penes / ante / per]
- Is ..... honestos homines atque adeo inter vivos numerabitur? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).  
[circum / inter / ad]
- Ipse igitur ille tibi se ..... matrem et sororem scripsisse narravit? (Cicero, *Pro Flacco*). [ad / penes / ante]
- ..... eam ipsam causam est mihi inimicus, quia nihil habet (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*). [post / apud / ob]
- Hoc proelio ..... Rhenum nuntiato, ... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [ad / ob / trans]

## 5/ Choose the correct preposition from the given list:

*ante / inter / ad / post / per / praeter*

- Relinquebatur una ..... Sequanos via (Cesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Ego neminem video ..... istum (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Alii cives Romani ..... necem rapiebantur (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- ..... diem tertium gesta res est quam dixerat (Cicero, *Pro Milone*).
- Etenim multa simul ..... oculos versabantur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Si tu, L. Philippe, qui ..... illos florebas, ... (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

## 6/ Write the correct preposition to replace the English expression:

- Tibi omnia sua [except] ..... animam tradidit (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Ipse honestissimus [among] ..... suos numerabatur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Nam [after] ..... te praetorem multi in isdem causis fuerunt (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Me domo mea [by] ..... vim expulstis (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Ille [at the house of] ..... te postea cenavit (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*).
- Legatos [to] ..... eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

## b) Prepositions followed by the ablative

1/ Choose the correct meaning of each preposition in these simple phrases:

a castris	IN / WITH / FROM
cum senatoribus	AMONG / FOR / WITH
de arce	FROM / UP TO / IN
e senatu	INTO / BY / OUT OF
prae timoris	WITHOUT / BECAUSE OF / ABOUT
pro pecunia	UNTIL / UNDER / IN EXCHANGE FOR
sine amicis	BY / WITHOUT / ACCORDING TO
urbe tenus	UNTIL / FROM / BEFORE

2/ Translate these phrases:

Out of the building	.....
With them	.....
In front of the house	.....
Up to that tree	.....
◊	
From the top of the tree	.....
Without hope	.....
In comparison to Caesar	.....
From the school	.....

3/ Complete the sentences by writing the given word in the ablative; remember that a preposition may have a different meaning in English:

▷▷ a/ab

- Dabo operam ut a ..... res quem ad modum gesta et contracta sit cognoscatis (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*). [principium]
- Postulat a Burrieno ..... Naevius ut ex edicto bona possidere liceat (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*). [praetor]

- Bidis oppidum est tenue sane, non longe a ..... (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [Syracusae]
- Huic hereditas HS quingentorum milium venerat a ..... propinqua (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [mulier quaedam]
- Ab ..... res quem ad modum gesta sit vobis exponemus (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [initium]

▷▷ **cum**

- Cum ..... tu voluntariam societatem coibas (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [is]
- Cum ..... perfidiaque vixerunt (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [audacia]
- Vos oro atque obsecro, iudices, ut attente bonaque cum ..... verba mea audiatis (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [venia]
- Solus tu inventus es qui cum ..... sederes (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [accusator]
- Ad hoc ipsum iudicium cum ..... venit (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [praesidium]

▷▷ **de**

- Reticuit de ..... . (Tacitus, *Annales*). [adversa (n. pl.)]
- His de ..... non necesse habeo dicere ea quae me P. Quinctius cupit commemorare (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [res (pl.)]
- Demonstrabant de ..... iudicium fieri oportere (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [res]
- De ..... ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [improvisum]
- Nos eam rem in medio relinquemus. De superiore ..... satis dictum [est] (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*). [coniuratio]

▷▷ **e/ex**

- In iudicio vides quem tu e ..... tamquam e naufragio nudum expulisti (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [patrimonium]
- Signum erat hoc quod dico Cupidinis e ....., ex altera ..... Hercules egregie factus ex aere (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [marmor] [pars]
- Verresne habebit domi suae candelabrum Iovis e ..... auroque perfectum? (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [gemmae]

- Decedit ex ..... Romam simul Naevius (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [Gallia]
- Ex ..... captivus et ex captivo consul est factus (Valerius Maximus, *Facta et Dicta Memorabilia*). [consul]

▷▷ **prae**

- ... conspersitque lacrimis nec loqui prae ..... potuit! (Cicero, *Pro Plancio*). [maeror]
- Sed finis sit; neque enim prae ..... iam loqui possumus (Cicero, *Pro Milone*). [lacrimae]
- [prae se ferre has sometimes a special meaning ...] Illud ipsum quod commemoras semper prae ..... tuli (Cicero, *Philippicae*). [ego]
- [... but not always] Reliquum est, Quirites, ut vos in ista sententia quam prae ..... fertis perseveretis (Cicero, *Philippicae*). [vos]
- Animadvertisit collem qui superioribus diebus vix prae ..... cerni poterat (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [multitudo]

▷▷ **pro**

- Ego pro ..... nunc hos consulio (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [tu]
- Rectum putabat pro eorum ..... se pugnare (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [honestas]
- Postulabant autem pro ..... miserrimo atque infelicissimo (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [homo]
- Dulce et decorum est pro ..... mori (Horatius, *Carmina*). [patria]
- Quod est, eo decet uti et quicquid agas, agere pro ..... (Cicero, *Cato Maior de Senectute*). [vires]

▷▷ **sine**

- At sine summo ..... P. Quinctium, propinquum tuum, iugulare non potes (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [scelus]
- Ait hoc se honeste sine ulla invidia ac sine ulla ..... contendere (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*). [offensio]
- Sine ..... vivere non potes. [pecunia]
- Hunc iubet sine ..... esse (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [cura]
- Tristis enim res est sine ..... (Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes*). [dubium]

▷▷ **tenus**

- Antiochus Magnus ille, rex Asiae, a L. Scipione devictus ..... tenus regnare iussus est (Cicero, *Pro Rege Deiotaro*). [Taurus, a mountain]
- Aquam ingressi sunt - et erat ..... tenus aucta nocturno imbri (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [pectoris]
- ..... tenus erecta terras fama supposita habet (Seneca iunior, *Hercules Oetaeus*). [caelum]
- Omnem superficiem amputabant ..... tenus (Columella, *De Re Rustica*). [solum]

**4/ Choose the right preposition for each sentence:**

- ..... me pugnabit L. Philippus (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [in / tenus / pro]
- Ad subsellia ..... ferro atque telis venistis ut hic aut iuguletis aut condemnnetis? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [prae / cum / de]
- In eo Chrysae simulacrum est praeclare factum ..... marmore (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [ab / tenus / e]
- P. Quincti consobrinam habet in matrimonio Naevius et ..... ea liberos (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [ex / prae / sine]
- Petis ..... me, quod in tua potestate est, ut id tibi facere ne liceat (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [cum / e / a]
- Ille nomen ..... metu ferre non poterat (Cicero, *Philippicae*). [pro / prae / de]

**5/ Choose the correct preposition from the given list:**

*de / cum / ex / ab / e / prae / de / pro / ex*

- Bona postulas ut ..... edicto possidere liceat (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Postea quam victoria constituta est ..... armisque recessimus, ... (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Ut primum ..... provincia rediit, ... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Videtis ut omnis despiciat, ut hominem ..... se neminem putet (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Naevio neque ..... societatis ratione neque privatim quicquam debuit Quinctius (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Perfidia decepti, ..... re certa spem falsam domum rettulerunt (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Igitur ..... Catilinae coniuratione quam verissime potero paucis absolvam (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

- Cives ..... civibus de virtute certabant (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- Qua ..... re controversia est? (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

**6/ Write the correct preposition to replace the English expression:**

- Venerat ad eum illo biduo Laetilius quidam, homo non alienus [from] ..... litteris (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Neque enim est hoc dissimulandum quod obscurari non potest, sed [in front of] ..... nobis ferendum (Cicero, *Pro Archia*).
- Atque illae quidem iniuriae, quae nocendi causa de industria inferuntur, saepe [away from] ..... metu profiscuntur (Cicero, *De Officiis*).
- Clamare coepit candelabrum factum [out of] ..... gemmis, id sibi C. Verrem abstulisse (Cicero, *In Verrem*). ◇
- Iudicium esse, C. Aquili, non [about] ..... re pecuniaria, sed de fama fortunisque P. Quincti vides (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Quid [away from] ..... his tot maleficiis sceleris abesse videtur? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Q. Curius, [about] ..... quo paulo ante memoravi, ... (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- Attendite diligenter; invenietis enim id facinus natum esse [from] ..... cupiditate (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

### 3. Prepositions of two cases

[103]

**a/ Choose the correct meaning of each preposition in these simple phrases:**

super mensam	ON (movement) / ON (no movement)
in Italia	IN / INTO
sub arbore	UNDER (movement) / UNDER (no movement)
in castra	IN / INTO
super petra	ON (movement) / ON (no movement)
sub pontem	UNDER (movement) / UNDER (no movement)

**b/ Translate the phrases in italics:**

I go *under the tree*. .....

We are *under the roof*. .....

I am standing *on the table*. ....

He put the animal *on the altar*. ....

The farmers are *in the field*. ....

He ran *into the building*. ....

c/ Complete each sentence by putting the given word either in accusative or in ablative:

▷▷ **in**

- Nihil est iam sanctum atque sincerum in ..... (*Cicero, Pro Quinctio*). [civitas]
- In ..... proficiscitur Quinctius (*Cicero, Pro Quinctio*). [Gallia]
- Primam et secundam aciem in ..... esse, tertiam castra munire iussit (*Caesar, De Bello Gallico*). [arma]
- In ..... sumus adducti (*Cicero, Pro Milone*). [spes maxima]
- Sermonem in ..... produximus (*Cicero, De Republica*). [multa nox]

▷▷ **sub**

- L. Cassium consulem interfecerat et eius exercitum sub ..... miserat (*Caesar, De Bello Gallico*). [iugum]
- Gallia sub ..... ut ante dictum est, posita est (*Caesar, De Bello Gallico*). [septentriones]
- Castra promovit et sub ..... consedit (*Caesar, De Bello Gallico*). [mons]
- Numquam te sub legum et iudiciorum ..... casurum esse duxisti? (*Cicero, In Verrem*). [potestas]
- Venibit igitur sub ..... tota Propontis atque Hellespontus (*Cicero, De Lege Agraria*). [praeco]

▷▷ **subter**

- Alpheum fama est hoc Elidis amnem occultas egisse vias subter ..... (*Vergilius, Aeneis*). [mare]
- Dixit, et angusti subter ..... tecti ingentem Aenean duxit (*Vergilius, Aeneis*). [fastigia (n. pl.)]
- Ceterae dormiunt, capite subter ..... condito alternis pedibus insistentes  
(*Plinius Secundus, Naturalis Historia*). [ala]
- Desilit in campum, qui subter ..... nudos adservat manes (*Statius, Thebaïs*). [moenia]

## ▷▷ super

- ... quid agendum nobis sit super ..... (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*). [legatio votiva]
- ..... super ..... scribam ad te (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*). [haec] [res]
- Vix tandem percepi super ..... ..... te loqui (Plautus, *Mostellaria*). [hae res nostrae]
- Te super ..... unum oro (Vergilius, *Aeneis*). [omnia dona]

d/ Complete each sentence using a preposition from the given list (each preposition may be used more than once):

*in / sub / super*

- ..... iis rebus, quae ..... eandem rationem cadunt, hoc modo probabile consideratur (Cicero, *De Inventione*).
- Definitio formas omnis complectitur quae ..... eo genere sunt (Cicero, *Topica*).
- Quod est hoc iudicium ..... quo iam biennum versamur? (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Iam lucescebat omniaque ..... oculis erant (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- ..... vesperum Caesar intra hanc fossam legiones reducit (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Sed ne de hoc quidem praecepta ..... universum expectanda sunt (Quintilianus, *Institutio Oratoria*).
- Turpi iudicio damnati ..... perpetuum omni honore ac dignitate privantur (Cicero, *Pro Cluentio*).

e/ Choose either *in* or *super* and then write the given word in the necessary case:

- Quis hoc statuit, quod aequum sit ..... , id iniquum esse in Naevium? (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [Quinctius]
- Discedens ..... redit Quinctius quo die Roma in Galliam profectus sit (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [memoria]
- Gallia est omnis divisa ..... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [partes tres]
- Primus ipse scuto ..... elato pergit ad portam (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [caput]
- Equus repente corruit consulemque lapsum ..... effudit (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [caput]
- ..... te, te inquam, testem, Naevi, citabo (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [haec res]
- Itaque semper versabatur ..... rerum novarum (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*). [spes]

### c) Expressions of time and place

## **1. Expressions of time**

[104]

a/ Link these expressions with their meanings:

AT THE SAME TIME / EVERY YEAR / IN SUMMER / AT NIGHTFALL / WITHIN THE NEXT DAYS / THREE YEARS AGO / AT THE BEGINNING OF THE  
YEAR / AFTER A FEW DAYS / DURING THREE HOURS / FOR THE WHOLE NIGHT / IN WINTER / DAY AND NIGHT / AT DAYBREAK

per tres horas	.....	uno tempore	.....
hieme	.....	omnibus annis	.....
aestate	.....	paucis post diebus	.....
abhinc tribus annis	.....	proximis diebus	.....
ineunte anno	.....	die et nocte	.....
totam noctem	.....	prima luce	.....
sub noctem	.....		

b/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the time expressions in italics and to which one of these aspects of time it relates:

- *when*
  - *in how much time*
  - *for how long*
  - *how long ago*
  - *since when*

- Mortem igitur *omnibus horis* inpendentem timens qui poterit animo consistere? (Cicero, *Cato Maior de Senectute*).
  - Cum *a prima luce ad horam octavam* pugnaretur, ... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
  - Itaque *quintum iam mensem* socius et amicus populi Romani armis obsessus teneor (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
  - Horum pater *abhinc duo et XX annos* est mortuus (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
  - *Ineunte anno exercitus in Galliam duxit.*



- Is Lilybaei *multos iam annos habitat* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Quintum iam diem sine alimento trahebat* (Petronius, *Satyricon*).
- *Talis ea tempestate fama de Cassio erat* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- *Exspectabam ibi iam quartum diem Pomptinum* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- *Eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

c/ Translate these simple time expressions into Latin:

within the next hours	.....
in old age	.....
within five hours	.....
on the first day	.....
during four years	.....
two years ago	.....
in summer	.....

d/ Choose the correct option to replace the English expression:

- [On the last day] ..... *castra ex eo loco movent* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
[abhinc posterum diem / postero die / in postero die]
- *Corpus custodire ac flere* [all nights and days] ..... *coepit* (Petronius, *Satyricon*).  
[totis noctibus diebusque / totius noctis dieique / totium noctium dierumque]
- *Caesari omnia* [at the same time] ..... *erant agenda* (Casar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
[unum tempus / uno tempore / unius temporis]
- *Nostri milites* [for more than four hours] ..... *fortissime pugnaverunt*  
(Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [amplius horis quattuor / amplior quattuor horas / amplius quattuor horas]
- [Within ten days] ..... *exercitus traducitur* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
[Diem post decem / Abhinc decem dies / Diebus decem]
- *Pompeius* [in summer] ..... *bellum fecit.* [post aestatem / aestatis / aestate]

e/ Replace the English expressions by putting the Latin word(s) in the necessary case:

- [On that year] ..... frumentum in Gallia propter siccitates angustius provenerat (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [is annus]
- Sum profectus [at daybreak] ..... (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*). [prima lux]
- Sub [nightfall] ..... dixere "vale" (Ovid, *Metamorphoses*). [nox]
- Non oportet [day and night] ..... laborare. [dies et nox]
- Caesar iussit eos naves [in winter] ..... aedificare. [hiems]
- Pompeius [a few days later] ..... post ..... in Thessaliam pervenit (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*). [pauci] [dies]

f/ Replace the English expression with a suitable Latin one:

- Quam provinciam tenuistis a praedonibus liberam [during these years] .....? (Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*).
- Quis hic est homo, quem ante aedis video [at that hour of the night] .....? (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- Octavius [during the first watch] ..... e castris egressus est. [watch = vigilia, -ae]
- Ariovistus [during all these days] ..... exercitum castris continuit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Numidae [within few days] ..... iussa efficiunt (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

## 2. Expressions of place

[105]

a/ Link these expressions with their meaning:

TOWARDS ATHENS / AT HOME / FROM HOME / THROUGH THE CITY / ACROSS THE BRIDGE / AT ROME / IN THE COUNTRY / (TOWARDS) HOME / IN PEACE AND IT WAR / AMONG THEM / TOWARDS THE CITY / FROM ROME / IN THAT PLACE / AGAINST CAESAR / TOWARDS TARENTUM / IN TARENTUM / FROM THE CITY / IN ATHENS / TOWARDS CAESAR / TOWARDS ROME / INTO THE CITY / ACROSS THE BRIDGE

eo loco	.....	domum	.....
Romae	.....	ruri	.....
Romam	.....	domi militiaeque	.....
Athenis	.....	apud eos	.....
Athenas	.....	ad urbem	.....
domi	.....	in urbem	.....

ad Caesarem	.....	Roma	.....
in Caesarem	.....	domo	.....
Tarentum	.....	per urbem	.....
Tarenti	.....	per pontem	.....
ex urbe	.....	ponte	.....

b/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the place expressions and to which one of these four aspects of place it relates:

- place where
- place to where
- place from where
- place through where

- Deinde patrio *regno* me expulit (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- *Ex eo oppido* pons *ad Helvetios* pertinet (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Milia passuum tria *ab eorum castris* castra ponit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Ruri agere* vitam procul ambitione ac foro constituit (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- *Trans Rhenum* incoluerant et *in agrum Noricum* transierant (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

◊

- *In Galliam ulteriorem* contendit et *ad Genavam* pervenit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Erat omnino *in Gallia ulteriore* legio una (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Ipse *in Italiam* magnis itineribus contendit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Legatos *ad eum* mittunt nobilissimos civitatis (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Pauci *ex proelio* elapsi incertis itineribus *per silvas* ad *T. Labienum* legatum *in hiberna* pervenient (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Inter se cohortati *per medios hostes* perrumpunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

c/ Translate these simple place expressions into Latin:

in Italy	.....
in Rome	.....
to Greece	.....

to Tarentum	.....
into the temple	.....
from Italy	.....
from Rome	.....
out of the temple	.....
at home	.....
homewards	.....
on the floor	.....

**d/ Choose the correct option to replace the English expression:**

- Cum legionibus tribus [out of the camp] ..... profectus ad eam partem pervenit  
(Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [a castris / e castris / castris]
- Miramur [in Athens] ..... Minervam, Deli Apollinem, Iunonem Sami, Pergae Dianam (Cicero, *In Verrem*).  
[in Athenis / ad Athenas / Athenis]
- ... , quae ego vidi Athenis, quae [in other cities] ..... Graeciae! (Cicero, *Pro Milone*).  
[in alias urbes / in aliis urbibus / aliis urbibus]
- Si, quo die ista caedes Romae facta est, ego Athenis eo die fui, [in the slaughter] ..... interesse non potui (Cicero, *De Inventione*). [in caede / caede / caedi]
- Quae [at home] ..... gerenda sunt, ea per Caeciliam transiguntur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).  
[in domo / domi / domo]
- Nullum signum domi reliquisti praeter duo quae [in the middle of the house] ..... sunt  
(Cicero, *In Verrem*). [in mediis aedibus / in medio aede / in medium aedum]

**e/ Replace the English expression by putting the Latin word(s) in the necessary case:**

- Cum duos filios haberet, alterum a se non dimittebat, alterum [in the country] ..... esse patiebatur  
(Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [rus]
- [At home and in the army] ..... res publica venalis fuit (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).  
[domus militiaque]
- Alfenus curat ut [home] ..... reducatur (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [domus]

- Caesar suos a [from the battle] ..... continebat (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [proelium]
- Decedit ex Gallia [to Rome] ..... simul Naevius (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*). [Roma]
- Roscium inopem, electum [out of home] ..... atque expulsum ex suis bonis, recepit domum (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [domus]

f/ Replace the English expression with a suitable Latin one:

- Uxorem suam [in the country] ..... esse aiebat (Plautus, *Mercator*).
- Gallos ab Aquitanis Garunna flumen, [from the Belgae] ..... Matrona et Sequana dividit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Eum autem statim inimicissimi Stheni [to their home] ..... invitant (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Aquitania [from the river Garunna] ..... ad Pyrenaeos montes pertinet (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus [out of the house] ..... exire possent: unum per Sequanos; alterum [through our province] ..... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

## d) Regime of verbs and adjectives

### 1. (unapplied in this book)

### 2. Verbs that rule a given case

[106]

a/ As a warm up, read these sentences already classified by the regime of their verbs:

▷▷ *Verbs that rule the genitive*

- *Misereor raptoris* (Fabius Quintilianus, *Declamationes Minores*).
- *Maiestatis populi Romani oblitus sum.*
- *Omnium orationum Ciceronis meminisse quis potest?*
- *Homo, qui in homine calamitoso est misericors, meminit sui* (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae*).

▷▷ *Verbs that rule the dative*

- *Libertas appropinquat nobis et poena appropinquat illi.*
- *Cessi tribuni plebis* (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*).
- *Fidei huius hominis diffisus sum.*
- *Venientibus malis obstat fortitudo* (Cicero, *De Partitione Oratoria*).
- *Hoc, quod talibus viris non subvenit, laudare non possum* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- *Non florentibus se venditavit, sed afflictis semper succurrit* (Nepos, *Vitae*).

▷▷ *Verbs that rule the ablative*

- *Hic homo sensu et honore caret.*
- *Defensione eget meum factum* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- *Neque tamen erit utendum verbis eis, quibus iam consuetudo nostra non utitur* (Cicero, *De Oratore*).
- *Platonis libris non utor.*
- *Lacte, caseo, carne vescor* (Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes*).

b/ Some of these verbs rule the genitive, others rule the dative, and others rule the ablative. Link the words below with their meanings:

TO APPROACH / TO FORGIVE / TO COMMAND / TO YIELD / TO TRUST / TO DISPLEASE / TO FAVOUR / TO REMEMBER / TO PITY / TO FORGET / TO ENVY

memini	.....	misereor	.....	impero	.....
credo	.....	obliviscor	.....	appropinquo	.....
displiceo	.....	faveo	.....	cedo	.....
invideo	.....	ignosco	.....		

TO HARM / TO HINDER / TO SPARE / TO BENEFIT / TO RESIST / TO DEVOTE ONESELF TO / TO ENJOY / TO OBTAIN / TO USE / TO PERSUADE / TO HELP / TO LACK

noceo	.....	resisto	.....	succurro	.....
studeo	.....	potior	.....	careo	.....
obsto	.....	utor	.....	fruor	.....
prosum	.....	parco	.....	persuadeo	.....

c/ Now list the verbs from above according to the case they rule:

- With genitive: .....
- With dative: .....
- With ablative: .....

d/ Read the following sets of sentences, paying attention to the case ruled by the verb:

- Haec statim nupsit *alio marito* (Fabius Quintilianus, *Declamationes Minores*).
- Legiones IIII equitatumque omnem *traicit duabusque Fabianis occurrit legionibus* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Armatis militibus *michi obstitit ne in senatum accederem*.
- Res publica frui debet summi viri *vita atque virtute* (Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*).
- Placuit *ei ut ad Arioustum legatos mitteret* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Meminit *temporum superiorum, meminit illarum quas aliquando communes habuit voluptatum, meminit amoris tui* (Fabius Quintilianus, *Declamationes Minores*).

◊

- Meminit *praeteritorum*, *praesentia cernit*, *futura providet* (Cicero, *De Divinatione*).
- Hominum natura *pluribus generibus* fruitur *voluptatum* (Cicero, *De Natura Deorum*).
- Cum hac dote poteris vel *mendico nubere* (Plautus, *Persa*).
- Alter fungitur *officio boni senatoris* (Cicero, *De Provinciis Consularibus*).
- His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, ... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Pareo *tibi*, pater (Seneca senior, *Controversiae*).

◊

- Civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Nulli se dicit mulier mea nubere malle quam mihi (Catulus, *Carmina*).
- Hoc *multis viris* placet.
- Ei munitioni quam fecerat T. Labienum legatum praefecit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Hi cives Sullanae dominationi restiterunt.

e/ Choose the correct form from the three options (all of them from the same root):

- Tu es ille, ..... crudelitas *dispicet*? (Cicero, *In Pisonem*). [cui / quem / qui]
- *Potitus est* ..... pugnando. [gloriam / gloriae / gloria]
- Eumenes neque *favit* ..... Persei, neque ... (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [victoriae / victorias / victoria]
- [Dixit] se *confidere* ..... oppidi (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*). [munitionum / munitionibus / munitio]
- Ut valet? Ut *meminit* .....? (Horace, *Epistulae*). [nos / nobis / nostri]
- Agrariae ..... *resisto* (Cicero, *De Lege Agraria*). [legi / lege / legum]

f/ Choose the correct form from the three options (from different roots):

- ..... *utitur* consul. [Bonam pecuniam / Bonis consiliis / Bonorum militum]
- Tu ..... *displicuisti*. [omnes nos / omnis exercitus / omnibus bonis]
- ..... *imperavi* ut eas quinque cohortis ad reliquum exercitum duceret (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*). [Milite / Legato / Consules]

- Dicitur Scipionem Africanum ..... *potitum esse.* [Carthagine / Tarenti / Africam]
- ..... *parcere vultis, iudices?* [Horum senatorum / Huic homini / Hoc dictatore]
- Nunc ..... *Iuno faveat* (Valerius Martialis, *Epigrammata*). [me / tibi / nostrum]

g/ Choose the correct verb according to its meaning and the case ruled by each one. The object ruled by the verb is in italics:

- Ego ..... *tui, puella* (Seneca senior, *Controversiae*). [parco / misereor / confido]
  - Cum vero etiam *litteris* ..... incipit et ... (Cicero, *Post Reditum in Senatu*).  
[studere / meminisse / oblivisci]
  - Ne iratus quidem Iuppiter plus Regulo nocuissest, quam *sibi* ..... ipse Regulus (Cicero, *De Officiis*).  
[favit / miseritus est / nocuit]
  - Is homo semper *auctoritati senatus* ..... . [paruit / usus est / caruit]
  - Etiam *Sallustio* ..... (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*). [potitus est / ignovit / meminit]
- ◇
- *Vilicis* ..... ut omnia praeberent. [defuit / fructus est / imperavit]
  - ..... *Cethegi adulescentiae* (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*). [Ignoscite / Mementote / Carete]
  - Non enim plebes incitata *nostris rebus* ..... (Cicero, *De Legibus*). [miseretur / invidit / interest]
  - Illa invidia *tibi* ..... [nocuit / obliviouscitur / usa est]
  - ..... *timori nostro* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*). [Ignosce / Uttere / Obliviscere]

h/ Replace the English verb with the most suitable Latin verb and write it in the necessary form. The object ruled by the verb is in italics:

- Quantum quisque *rei publicae* [supported] ..... , tantum mihi fuit aut amicus aut adversarius  
(Cicero, *In Sallustium Crispum*). [scrutor / studeo / sto]
- [Does he remember] ..... *libertatis?* (Plautus, *Persa*). [misceo / miror / memini]
- Non hic *cuiquam* [will spare] ..... *amico* (Horace, *Sermones*). [paro / parco / pareo]
- Ne noster quidem Gratidianus *officio* viri boni [has performed] ..... tum, cum praetor esset  
(Cicero, *De Officiis*). [fruor / fungor / facio]

- Sin autem [to serve] ..... *meae laudi et gloriae* mavis, egredere cum importuna sceleratorum manu (Cicero, *In Catilinam*). [servo / servio / saevio]
- Q. Lucanius , dum *circumvento filio* [came to help] ..... interficitur (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [venio / subvenio / iuvō]

◊

- Simulat *his se rebus* [to rely on] ..... (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [confido / conficio / confero]
- C. Macer *auctoritate* semper [lacked] ..... (Cicero, *Brutus*). [ago / egeo / exigo]
- *Caesaris* [was of interest] ..... Romam celeriter proficisci. [interpolo / interficio / intersum]
- *Tibi* [to serve] ..... malui multo, quam alii libertus esse (Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus*). [servo / servio / sero]
- A primo tempore aetatis *iuri* [to devote yourself] ..... te memini (Cicero, *De Legibus*). [sto / stupeo / studeo]
- *Tibi* etiam in hoc [I congratulate] ..... (Cicero, *Pro Plancio*). [ignosco / gratulor / faveo]

### 3. Adjectives followed by a given case

[107]

a/ Some of these adjectives rule the genitive, others rule the dative, and others rule the ablative. After each adjective, write eius, ei or eo according to the case it rules (remember that some adjectives may rule more than one case) and link them with their meaning:

FULL OF IT / HOSTILE TO IT / NEAR TO IT / DESIROUS OF IT / DEPRIVED OF IT / WORTHY OF IT / RELYING UPON IT / GREEDY FOR IT / SIMILAR TO IT / FOND OF IT / DEAR TO IT / FORGETFUL OF IT / SHARING IN IT / TOLERANT OF IT / ENDOWED WITH IT

carus	.....	cupidus	.....
inimicus	.....	expers	.....
proximus	.....	patiens	.....
dignus	.....	plenus	.....
fretus	.....	similis	.....
immemor	.....	studiosus	.....
particeps	.....	praeditus	.....
avidus	.....		

b/ Read these sentences, paying attention to the regime of the adjective:

- Particeps tu factus es *turpissimi foederis*.
- Corpus [Catilinae erat] patiens *inediae, algoris, vigiliae* (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- Dumnorix *Helvetiis* erat amicus (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Carus fuit *Africano* noster Ennius (Cicero, *Pro Archia*).
- Semper memor *patriae* fuit Cicero.
- Fretus *vestra prudentia*, iudices, non pertimesco (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).



- Eum occiderunt in loco *latronum* pleno.
- Catilina fit *publici consilii* particeps.
- Fretus Antoni *copiis ea scelera suscepit* (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- P. Murena fuit *litterarum* studiosus.
- Contentus *his tam opimis rebus* non fuisti? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Metelli est filius in provincia non puer, sed adulescens pudens ac bonus, dignus *illo loco ac nomine* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

◊ In all of the following exercises, remember that some adjectives may rule more than one case.

c/ Choose the correct form of the noun. The adjective that rules the noun is in italics:

- Dolabella quidem tam fuit *immemor* ..... ut suam insatiabilem crudelitatem exercuerit non solum in vivo, sed etiam in mortuo (Cicero, *Philippicae*). [humanitate / humanitatis / humanitatem]
- In Theatro homines *imperiti* ..... consedent. [litterarum / litteris / litterae]
- Navis *inanis* ..... erat. [pecuniis / pecunia / pecuniae]
- Tam eram rudis, tam *ignarus* ..... tam expers consili aut ingenii? (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*). [rerum / rebus / res]
- Hi *memores* ..... esse videntur. [beneficiis / beneficia / beneficii]
- Non illi, inquam, ..... sed causee communi libertatis *inimicus* fuisti (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [homine / homini / hominum]



- *Proximus est* ..... *ordo equester* (Cicero, *De Domo Sua*).  
[huius dignitatis / hoc dignitate / huic dignitati]
- *Tuae epistulae inanes* ..... sunt. [sapientias / sapientiae / sapientia]
- *Tum iste procedit in medium* ..... *plenus* (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [vini / vino / vinus]
- *Ego* ..... *similis putor.* [patri / patris / patre]
- ..... *particeps* fuit Verres. [Praedis / Praeda / Praedae]
- *Iste mediocri* ..... *contentus* non erat (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*). [praeda / praedae / praedarum]

d/ Write the given noun in the necessary case according to the adjective. The adjective that rules the noun is in italics:

- *Poetae semper cupidi* ..... sunt. [corona laurea]
- *Timeo ne indignus* ..... videar. [beneficium]
- *P. Considius, qui* ..... *peritissimus* habebatur, ... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [res militaris]
- *Aemilius Scaurus erat homo avidus* ..... [divitiae]
- *Hic discipulus studiosus* ..... est. [Plato] [audiendus]
- *Vir fortissimus est ac* ..... *dissimillimus*. [tu]



- ..... *orbus es* (Quintilianus, *Declamationes Maiores*). [Magnus animus]
- *Indignus* ..... es! [tuus pater]
- *Fabius Pictor et iuris et litterarum et* ..... *bene peritus* [fuit] (Cicero, *Brutus*). [antiquitas]
- *Reditus Caesaris* ..... *gratus* fuit. [milites]
- *Quaeris cur* ..... *sim inimicus?* (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [is]
- *Erat* ..... *cupidus Artemo quidam* (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [is honor]

e/ Replace the English adjective with the necessary Latin one and then add the given noun in the necessary case:

- [Forgetful of] ..... a me ..... esse videor (Cicero, *Pro Sulla*). [res ... gestae]
  - Domum [similar to] ..... emi. [tua]
  - Cum Licinia, virgo Vestalis summo loco nata, ..... [endowed with] ..... (Cicero, *De Domo Sua*). [sanctissimum sacerdotium]
  - Consul [greedy for] ..... erat ..... [bellum gerendum]
  - Quicumque hoc fecit, ..... [worthy of] ..... est (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [supplicium]
  - Cicero non ..... [dear to] ..... fuit. [omnes]
- ◇
- Mei milites [tolerant of] ..... sunt. [difficiles labores]
  - Cicero [very skilled in] ..... erat. [ius]
  - Orabat deinde ne se [deprived of] ..... facerent (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [liberi]
  - M. Manilius adsedit [near to] ..... (Cicero, *De Republica*). [Laelius]
  - Nemo in senatu est [free from] ..... [periculum]
  - ... L. Suettius, homo ..... [endowed with] ..... (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [omnia ornamenta]

## SYNTAX OF CLAUSES

### a) Simple clauses

1. Describing real actions
2. Expressing potential actions
3. Expressing commands and prohibitions
4. Expressing wishes
5. Asking questions
6. Impersonal verbs

### b) Subordinate clauses

1. The concept of *consecutio temporum*
2. Causal clauses
3. Purpose clauses
4. Temporal clauses
5. Concessive clauses
6. Result clauses
7. Conditional clauses
8. Relative clauses
9. Comparative clauses
10. Fear clauses
11. Indefinite clauses
12. Proviso clauses
13. *Quominus* and *quin* clauses
14. Summary of the uses of *cum*
15. Summary of the uses of *ut*
16. Completive *quod* clauses

### c) Infinitive clauses

1. General principles
2. What tense of the infinitive?
3. Where there is no change of subject
4. Historical infinitive
5. Exclamative infinitive

### d) Participle clauses

1. General principles
2. The participle is impersonal
3. The temporal correlation
4. Participle as a verb
5. Participle as a noun
6. The ablative absolute

### e) Indirect speech

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Indirect statement clauses
3. Indirect command clauses
4. Indirect question clauses
5. Subordinate clauses in indirect speech
6. A special technique: *Oratio Obliqua*

### f) Uses of the gerund and gerundive

1. Definition and forms
2. Uses of the gerund
3. Gerundive replacing the gerund
4. Exceptions to the replacement

### g) The periphrastic conjugation and the supine

1. The active periphrastic
2. The passive periphrastic
3. The supine

### h) Combination of negatives

1. Tendencies in the use of negatives
2. Negatives cancelling or reinforcing each other?

### a) Simple clauses

#### 1. Describing real actions

[108]

a/ Read these sentences, some of them presented in pairs, and pay attention to the different temporal meanings of the verbal tenses in italics:

- Strenue *pugnabant* atque in hostium naves *transcendebant* / Strenue *pugnaverunt* atque in hostium naves *transcenderunt*.
- Heri amicum in foro *vidi* / Hodie amicum in foro *vidi*.
- Per fallaciam quam *amabam abduxit* (Plautus, *Asinaria*).
- Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata *referebantur* et legati ab Haeduis et a Treveris *veniebant* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*) / Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata *relata sunt* et legati ab Haeduis et a Treveris *venerunt*.
- Cum Caesar in Galliam *venit*, alterius factionis principes *erant* Haedui, alterius Sequani (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Pompeius, ut equitatum suum pulsum *vidit* atque eam partem, cui maxime *confidebat*, perterritam *animadvertisit*, protinus se in castra equo *contulit* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Hostes abiectis armis terga *verterunt* magnusque eorum numerus *est occisus*. Caesar postero die T. Labienum legatum cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia *reduxerat*, in Morinos qui rebellionem *fecerant misit*. (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

b/ Read these sentences paying attention to the verbs in italics and say which ones do not reflect a real action and why:

- Ne spirare quidem sine metu *possunt* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).  
.....

- Si superior omnibus *esses*, semper *vinceres*.  
.....

- Semper *vincebat* propterea quod superior omnibus erat.  
.....

- Utinam hic *esses!*  
.....

- Huc consul praesidium *imposuit* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- 

- *Animadvertisi* Numidas quietos esse.
- 

◊

- Quam celerrime *venias*.
- 

- *Eamus hinc intro* (Plautus, *Bacchides*).
- 

- *Hortemur ut properent* (Plautus, *Casina*).
- 

- *Cubitum imus*.
- 

- *Vera dicas velim* (Plautus, *Casina*).
- 

◊

- *Ita [es] ut dicis* (Plautus, *Captivi*).
- 

- *Utinam audire non queas* (Plautus, *Cistellaria*).
- 

- *Ne istius quidem laudis ita sum cupidus* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- 

- *Di prohibeant, iudices* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- 

- *Ne hoc in mentem veniat!*
-

## 2. Expressing potential actions

[109]

a/ Answer these questions:

▷ What tense is used to express *present* potentiality?

.....

▷ What tense is used to express *past* potentiality?

.....

▷ What tense is used to express *future* potentiality?

.....

b/ Express these sentences in such a way that they convey *future*, *present* and *past* potentiality:

❖ Example:	(Given sentence:)	<i>Caesar Gallos vincit</i>	CAESAR DEFEATS THE GAULS
	Future potentiality:	<i>Caesar Gallos vincat</i>	CAESAR COULD DEFEAT THE GAULS (in the future).
	Present potentiality:	<i>Caesar Gallos vinceret</i>	CAESAR COULD DEFEAT THE GAULS (now).
	Past potentiality:	<i>Caesar Gallos vicisset</i>	CAESAR COULD HAVE DEFEATED THE GAULS.

• *Divites sumus omnes.*

Future: .....

Present: .....

Past: .....

• *Pecuniam mihi das.*

Future: .....

Present: .....

Past: .....

• *Domi militiaeque boni mores coluntur.*

Future: .....

Present: .....

Past: .....

- Magistri haec mihi *dicunt*.

Future: .....

Present: .....

Past: .....

- Pompeium necare *nolunt*.

Future: .....

Present: .....

Past: .....

- Exercitum ei *tradit*.

Future: .....

Present: .....

Past: .....

- Duobus locis haud longe inter se castra *faciunt*.

Future: .....

Present: .....

Past: .....

c/ Now do the same with these English sentences: translate them into Latin in the three possible ways, expressing future, present and past potentiality:

- The soldiers destroy the city.

Future: .....

Present: .....

Past: .....

- Octavia sails to Athens.

Future: .....

Present: .....

Past: .....

- They tell me the truth.

Future: .....

Present: .....

Past: .....

- You depart from Rome.

Future: .....

Present: .....

Past: .....

- The citizens save the temple.

Future: .....

Present: .....

Past: .....

- She comes back from the village.

Future: .....

Present: .....

Past: .....

d/ For each pair, read the Latin sentence; the sentence may correspond to any one of the three kinds of potentiality. Then, using the Latin sentence as a model, translate the English one into Latin.

- *Vellem aliquis ex vobis hunc male dicendi locum suscepisset* (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).

We would like that someone of them would have told him this.

.....

- *Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

There were five boys to whom you could have said everything.

.....

- *At enim forsitan hoc tibi veniat in mentem* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).

Maybe you hear about it.

.....

- *Quonam pacto possim?* (Plautus, *Pseudolus*).

How would they be able?

.....

- *De rebus loquaris ipse tuis* (Propertius, *Elegiae*).

Should I speak about my business?

.....



- Ubi habitaret *invenires* saltem, si nomen nequis (Plautus, *Mercator*).

At least, tell me where he is.

---

- Ecquis Volatio unam libellam *dedisset*? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

But who would have told him this?

---

- Aquam *velim* (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).

We would like some food.

---

- Hic *haberet* regnum in caelo (Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus*).

I would now have a lot of money at home.

---



- *Habuisses enim non hospitem sed contubernalem* (Cicero, *Epistulae*).

They would have got not an enemy but a friend.

---

- Quid ad has *definitions possim dicere*? (Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes*).

What could I say about your book?

---

- In vastatione omnium tuas *possessiones sacrosantas futuras putas*? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

Would they think that their relatives would be safe and sound?

---

- *Vera dicas velim* (Plautus, *Casina*).

He would like them to arrive quickly.

---

### 3. Expressing commands and prohibitions

[110]

#### a) Commands

##### 1/ Answer these questions:

- ▷ What word does often precede the imperative? .....
- ▷ Apart from the imperative, what other mood can be used to express an order? .....

##### 2/ Read these sentences and pay attention to the words in italics:

- *Veniat* quando vult (Plautus, *Bacchides*).
- *Epidice, eo veni* (Plautus, *Epidicus*).
- *Quid cogites de adventu tuo scribe ad nos* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- *Age nunc, illa videamus, iudices* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Sit ita factum* (Cicero, *Pro Milone*).



- *Esto; hoc commune est* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- "Age," inquit, "duc tecum Libanum et Sosiam" (Cicero, *Rhetorica ad Herennium*).
- *Dic, aude* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).
- *Legite testimonia testium vestrorum* (Cicero, *Pro Milone*).
- *Age vero, nunc inferte oculos in curiam* (Cicero, *Pro Fonteio*).



- "Facite", inquit, "quod libet" (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Si audes, fac mentionem innocentiae* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Vos, quaeso, date hoc et concedite pudori meo ut aliquam partem de istius impudentia reticere possim* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- "Age dic", inquit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Signum date populo Romano consilium vestrum non deesse rei publicae* (Cicero, *Philippicae*).

**3/ Read these more difficult sentences and underline any future imperative you find:**

- Qui in adversa tempestate navem reliquerint, omnia *amittunt*; eorum naves et onera *sunt*, qui in nave remanserint (Cicero, *De Inventione*).
- Bini *sunt*, magistratum quinquennium *habent* (Cicero, *De Legibus*).
- Et *loquatur et taceat et rideat* (Seneca iunior, *Dialogi*).
- Qua re ista condicio, iudices, *respuatur* (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- Quod iubebo *scribito* istic (Plautus, *Bacchides*).
- Age nunc, Luci noster, *extre* animo altitudinem excellentiamque virtutum (Cicero, *De Finibus*).

**4/ Translate each command in both ways: using the imperative and using ut + subjunctive:**

- Give me your weapons! ..... ....
  - Come here! ..... ....
  - Write more books! ..... ....
  - Finish your task! ..... ....
- ◇
- Destroy the bridge! ..... ....
  - Run home! ..... ....
  - Fight bravely! ..... ....
  - Flee immediately! ..... ....

**5/ Translate into the Latin imperative singular using the verb in brackets (all these imperatives have a common irregularity):**

- Do what you have told me. [facere]

.....

- Tell him everything. [dicere]

.....

- Lead these soldiers to the camp. [ducere]

.....

- Carry these books to your house, please. [ferre]
- .....

**6/ Translate these 3<sup>rd</sup> person imperatives:**

- Let them arrive whenever they want.
- .....

- Let them fight.
- .....

- Let her go to Rome.
- .....

- Let this law be accepted, o judges.
- .....

**b) Prohibitions****1/ For each pair, using the Latin sentence as a model, translate the English one into Latin:**

- *Noli istud quaeso dicere!* (Plautus, *Mercator*).

Do not tell lies!

.....

- *Noli flere* (Plautus, *Persa*).

Do not sleep!

.....

- *Magna sunt ea quae dico, mihi credere; noli haec contemnere* (Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*).

Believe him, it is a very large army. Do not despise it.

.....

- *Noli tam esse iniustus* (Cicero, *Pro Murena*).

Do not be so lazy!

.....

- *Noli maleficium putare esse gratiam* (Cicero, *Pro Plancio*).

Do not think that badness is a virtue.

.....



- **Hanc pati nolite diutius in hac re publica versari** (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).  
Do not allow him to remain any longer in our city.
- 

- **Nolite enim id putare accidere posse quod in fabulis saepe videtis fieri** (Cicero, *De Haruspicum Responso*).  
Do not think that what you have heard may happen.
- 

- **Nolite igitur id velle quod fieri non potest** (Cicero, *Philippicae*).  
So, do not desire what you cannot have.
- 

- **Ne quid, quod illi doleat, dixeris** (Plautus, *Cistellaria*).  
Do not do anything that may displease them.
- 

- **Cave quemquam alienum in aedis intro miseris** (Plautus, *Aulularia*).  
Take care not to open this book.
- 

- **Cave istuc feceris** (Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus*).  
Take care not to go into the house.
- 

**2/ Translate each command in three ways: using noli, ne + perfect subjunctive and cave + present subjunctive:**

❖ Example:    Do not write!    ⇒    Noli scribere! / Ne scriperis! / Cave scribas!

- Do not come here!
- 

- Do not speak!
- 

- Do not fight against the Gauls!
-

- Do not sleep!  
.....
- Do not put the weapons into the ship!  
.....
- Do not kill the prisoners!  
.....
- Do not lose the money!  
.....

#### 4. Expressing wishes

[111]

a/ What verbal tense is used to express a wish...

- ... for the present? .....
- ... for the future? .....
- ... for the past? .....

b/ Read the following sentences; make sure that you realise whether the sentence expresses a wish for the past, present or future, according to the verbal tense used:

- Nec istud, inquit, dii *sinant*! (Petronius, *Satyricon*).
- Utinam ille omnis secum copias *eduxisset*! (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).
- Utinam nunc stimulus in manu mihi *sit*! (Plautus, *Asinaria*).
- Utinam is *sit* quem ego quaero! (Plautus, *Rudens*).
- Utinam ne Phormioni id suadere in mentem *incidisset*! (Terentius Afer, *Phormio*).
- Utinam is quidem Romae *esset*! (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).
- Nam illud quidem non dices – quod utinam *dicas*! (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

c/ Now write the given verb in the necessary form (keeping it in the same person) according to the kind of wish requested:

- Hanc utinam faciem [non vult] ..... mutare senectus! (Propertius, *Elegiae*). [wish for the future]
- Utinam [facit] .....! (Cicero, *Pro Rabirio*). [wish for the past]

- Sagunti ruinae – falsus utinam vates [sum] ..... – nostris capitibus incident! (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).  
[wish for the future]
- Utinam etiam L. Lucullus illi [adsideo] .....! (Cicero, *De Provinciis Consularibus*). [wish for the present]
- Utinam, patres conscripti, Kalendis Sextilibus adesse [posum] .....! (Cicero, *Philippicae*).  
[wish for the past]
- Nunc [dat] ..... audaces utinam mihi Daedalus alas (Ovid, *Epistulae*). [wish for the present]
- Utinam, M. Antoni, avum tuum [meministi] .....! (Cicero, *Philippicae*). [wish for the present]

d/ Translate each sentence paying attention to whether it represents a wish for the present, future or past:

- If only now he were here!

.....

- If only he were here tomorrow!

.....

- If only he had been here yesterday!

.....

- If only you had run faster!

.....

◇

- If only I had more money!

.....

- If only I were to become a general!

.....

- If only you told me this!

.....

- If only we could arrive before!

.....

## 5. Asking questions

[112]

### a) Yes/no questions

1/ How do you make clear that you expect the answer to be “yes” or “no”?

For “no”: .....

For “yes”: .....

2/ Read these simple questions and then modify each one of them twice, producing the expected answer as “yes” or “no” respectively:

- Pensem fecistis?

.....

.....

- Necaverunt Caesarem senatores?

.....

.....

- Omnia huic dixisti?

.....

.....

- Ludis cotidie cum amicis?

.....

.....

- Mihi favebis ut senator fiam?

.....

.....

- Urbem delere vis?

.....

.....

3/ Read these original questions:

- Possumus hoc quoque ex te audire? (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*).
- Num istaec mulier illinc venit? (Plautus, *Menaechmi*).
- Estne hic hostis, quem aspicio, meus? (Plautus, *Bacchides*).
- Nonne me huc erus misit meus? (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- Num me illuc ducis? (Plautus, *Asinaria*).



- Etiam huic credis? (Plautus, *Captivi*).
- Num quid vis? (Plautus, *Aulularia*) [↗ Note: What would the same sentence without *num* mean?]
- Vos pro libertate quam ab illis accepistis, nonne summa ope nitemini? (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Num obdormivisti dudum? (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- Quaeso, nonne intellegis? (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- Nonne arbitraris eum adulescentem anuli paterni signum novisse? (Plautus, *Trinummus*).

4/ Translate each question; those with a question tag at the end will tell you whether a positive or a negative answer is expected:

- You have not drunk all the wine, have you?

- You have done what I told you, haven't you?

- Isn't your brother in the city?

- You have understood what the teacher has explained, haven't you?

- You can't run faster than I, can you?

### b) Double questions

1/ What are the two Latin ways of indicating "whether"?

2/ Read these questions:

- Utrum quid agatur non vides, an apud quos agatur? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Utrum factum negabis an tibi hoc licitum esse defendes? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

- In fundum Caecina utrum tandem noluit, an non potuit accedere? (Cicero, *Pro Caecina*).
  - Utrum enim [eum] inscientem vultis contra foedera fecisse an scientem? (Cicero, *Pro Balbo*).
  - Is privatam servitutem servit illi an publicam? (Plautus, *Captivi*). ↗ There were private and public servants.
- ◇
- Utrum te perfidiosum an prevaricatorem existimari mavis? (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*).
  - Dic enim, tabulas habes an non? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).
  - Utrum hoc tantum crimen praetermittes an obicies? (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*).
  - In fundum Caecina utrum tandem noluit, an non potuit accedere? (Cicero, *Pro Caecina*).
  - Corinthiis bellum indicamus an non? (Cicero, *De Inventione*).

### 3/ Translate into Latin:

- Have you seen the Acropolis or not?
- .....

- Do you want to go to Italy or to Germania?
- .....

- Did you not want to go to Rome, or were you not able to?
- .....

- Did you read three letters or only two yesterday?
- .....

- Did the Romans declare war on Carthage or not?
- .....

- Do you want to become a senator or a general?
- .....

### c) Partial questions

#### 1/ Read these questions and specify whether they are adverbial or adjectival/pronominal:

- Quo te nomine appellemus? (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). .....
- Ubi sunt, qui Antonium Graece negant scire? (Cicero, *De Oratore*). .....

- Orationis quot sunt partes? (Cicero, *De Partitione Oratoria*). ....
- Quae erat aut qualis quaestio? (Cicero, *Pro Milone*). ....
- Quid facitis? Cur recusatis? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). ....

◊

- Cur potius illius quam huius credetur? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*). ....
- — Quis istic Sosia est? — Ego, inquam. Quotiens dicendum est tibi? (Plautus, *Amphitruo*). ....
- Quid igitur ego dubito, aut cur non intro eo in nostram domum? (Plautus, *Amphitruo*). ....
- Cur non venisti, ut iusseram, in tonstrinam? (Plautus, *Asinaria*). [tonstrina BARBER'S SHOP] ....
- — Erus nuptias meus hodie faciet. — Cuius dicit filiam? (Plautus, *Aulularia*). ....

**2/ For each pair, using the Latin question as a model, translate the English one into Latin:**

- Ubi erant ceteri creditores? (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

Where were you?

.....

- Qui sunt ei? Cur non nominantur? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

Who stole the money? Why don't you say it?

.....

- — Cuius es? — Amphitruonis, inquam, Sosia (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).

Whose daughter has written this book?

.....

- Ubi eos convenit? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

Where did you find him?

.....

- Quam ob causam? Quis prohibuit? Cui dixit? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

Why? Who allowed it? Whom did you tell about this?

.....

◊

- **Ubi occisus est Sextus Roscius?** (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

Where will Caesar be killed?  
.....

- **Quo modo occidit?** (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

How have you travelled to that city?  
.....

- **Unde eos noverat Roscius?** (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

Where did you get to know her?  
.....

- **Quot aratores adveniente te fuerunt agri Mutycensis?** (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

How many citizens went to listen to Cicero?  
.....

- **Unde ergo hoc intellegi potest?** (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

From where can you deduce this?  
.....

- **Ubi aut unde audivit Glaucia? Qui tam cito scivit?** (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [qui = quo modo]

Where did you hear that? How did you get to know it so quickly?  
.....

#### d) Deliberative questions

1/ **What is a deliberative question?**  
.....

2/ **What verbal mood does it use?**  
.....

3/ **Read these questions:**

- **Nunc vero quid faciat Hortensius? Avaritiaene crimina frugalitatis laudibus deprecetur?** (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- **Quid dicam de auctoritate?** (Cicero, *Pro Balbo*).
- **Cur hoc ego ex te quaeram?** (Plautus, *Asinaria*).

- Quid ego dicam? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Quid igitur faciam? (Cicero, *De Natura Deorum*).
- — Audivistin tu me narrare haec hodie? — Ubi ego audiverim? (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).

#### 4/ Translate into Latin as deliberative questions:

- What are you to do now?
- .....

- The library has been destroyed. What books are we to read now?
- .....

- Where am I to go?
- .....

- Who is to help me?
- .....

- With what money am I to buy this?
- .....

## 6. Impersonal verbs

[113]

### a) Verbs of propriety

#### 1/ Translate these impersonal verbs or expressions:

necesse est	.....	praestat	.....
libet	.....	mos est ut	.....
decet	.....	oportet	.....
licet	.....	restat ut	.....
dedecet	.....		

#### 2/ Read these sentences:

- Peccare certe licet nemini (Cicero, *Paradoxa Stoicorum*).
- Conveniat mihi tecum necesse est (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

- Emere oportet, quem tibi oboedire velis (Plautus, *Persa*).
- Libet perlegere has [tabellas] (Plautus, *Bacchides*).
- Restat ut in castra Sexti nos conferamus (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).

◊

- Quam ob rem licet irrideas (Cicero, *Paradoxa Stoicorum*).
- Hoc intellegamus necesse est (Cicero, *Pro Caecina*).
- Heia, mea Iuno, non decet esse te tam tristem tuo Iovi (Plautus, *Casina*).
- De proximo bello civili non libet dicere (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Funestam dedecet esse domum (Ovid, *Epicedion Drusi*).

◊

- Vincat necesse est (Cicero, *Pro Tullio*).
- Multo praestat benefici quam malefici inmemorem esse (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Restat ut omnes unum velint qui habent aliquid non sapientiae modo sed etiam sanitatis (Cicero, *Pro Marcello*).
- Vel pace vel bello clarum fieri licet (Sallust, *Catiniae Coniuratio*).

▷ From the above, could you mark in which sentences the person who must perform the action is indicated (in whatever case) and in which ones it is not?

**3/ Read these sentences and change them into a construction of ut + subjunctive:**

- Non licet mihi dicere? (Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus*).
- .....

- Te dicere atque enumerare causas omnis oportebat (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- .....

- Oratorem vero irasci minime decet, simulare non dedecet (Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes*).
- .....

## 4/ Translate these sentences into Latin using impersonal expressions:

- You must go home.
- .....

- You are allowed to go home.
- .....

- It is not convenient for you to go home.
- .....

- After the battle, all that remains is that you go home.
- .....

- It is fair that you go home.
- .....

- It is necessary that you go home.
- .....

b) Verbs of negative feeling (*verba affectuum*)

## 1/ Translate these impersonal verbs:

pudet ..... taedet ..... paenitet .....

miseret ..... piget .....

## 2/ Read these sentences:

- *Taedet tui sermonis* (Plautus, *Casina*).
  - *Non paenitet me famae* (Terentius Afer, *Hecyra*).
  - *Me civitatis morum piget taedetque* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
  - *Pudet prodire me ad te in conspectum, pater* (Plautus, *Bacchides*).
  - *Mea mater, tui me miseret* (Ennius, *Tragoediae*).
- ◇
- *Num facti piget?* (Terentius Afer, *Andria*).
  - *Iam dudum pudet tam multa scribere* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).

- Si talium civium vos, iudices, *taedet*, ostendite (Cicero, *Pro Flacco*).
- Neque me *paenitet* hoc tempore potius quam illo causam A. Cluenti defendere (Cicero, *Pro Cluentio*).
- *Miseret* te aliorum, tui nec *miseret* nec *pudet* (Plautus, *Trinummus*).

**3/ Translate into Latin:**

- I feel sorry for his death.
- .....

- This conspiracy displeases me.
- .....

- The games in the Circus bore me.
- .....

- Later he was ashamed of his words.
- .....

- Cassius did not repent of having killed Caesar.
- .....

**c) Verbs of interest**

**1/ In what case must the person for whom the matter is of interest be?**

- If it is not a personal pronoun, it must be in .....
- If it is a personal pronoun, it must be in .....

**2/ Read these sentences:**

- Aratoris autem *interest* se frumenta habere (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Quid id *refert* mea? (Plautus, *Curculio*).
- Neque enim mea iam quicquam *interest* (Cicero, *De Domo Sua*).
- Nihil enim mea iam *refert* (Cicero, *In Pisonem*).
- Hoc *interest*, quod voluptas dicitur etiam in animo (Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*).
- Quantum habeat, id *refert* (Cicero, *De Oratore*).



- Quid id *refert* tua? (Plautus, *Casina*).
- At nostra *interest* scire ea, quae eventura sunt (Cicero, *De Divinatione*).
- Quid *refert*, si accipere non possumus? (Cicero, *De Divinatione*).
- Si ita est et si iam tua plane nihil *interest*, ... (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- Per aestatem boves aquam bonam et liquidam bibant semper curato: ut valeant *refert* (Porcius Cato, *De Agri Cultura*).
- Tua istuc *refert* maxime (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Quintum Fratrem*).

**3/ Translate into Latin, taking special care in whether the person affected must be expressed in genitive or in ablative:**

- It is in your interest that I write these books.
- .....

- It is in my interest that you buy these books.
- .....

- Caesar is interested in knowing who is going to command the army.
- .....

- What does it matter, if we can't defeat the Gauls?
- .....

- This is very interesting for you and for the general.
- .....

#### d) Verbs describing meteorological phenomena

**1/ Translate these expressions into Latin:**

it rains .....      it thunders .....      it snows .....      it hails .....

**2/ Read these sentences:**

- In Hyrcanis montibus a meridiano latere non *pluit* (Plinius Secundus, *Naturalis Historia*).
- Caelum *tonat* omne fragore (Vergil, *Aeneis*).

- At quare aliquando non *fulgurat et tonat*? (Seneca iunior, *Naturales Quaestiones*).
- In ea parte in qua iam *pluit* ... (Seneca iunior, *Naturales Quaestiones*).
- *Nivit sagittis et saxis grandinat* (Pacuvius, *Praetextae*).

**3/ Translate into Latin:**

- We can't go outside because it's raining.
- .....

- Can't you hear? It's thundering.
- .....

- It always snows at the top of the mountains.
- .....

**e) The impersonal passive**

**1/ Read these sentences, identifying clearly the impersonal passive usage of the verbs:**

- A criter utrimque usque ad vesperum *pugnatum est* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Vario certamine *pugnatum est* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Britannos quoque, ut ex captivis *audiebatur*, visa classis obstupefaciebat (Tacitus, *Agricola*).
- *Itur* in consilium; servus ille innocens omnibus sententiis absolvitur (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Rex sive fraudem suspectans, quia plura simul in loca *ibatur*, sive ... (Tacitus, *Annales*).

**2/ Translate into Latin using impersonal passive forms of the verbs given:**

- *It is said* that Marcellus has run away from Rome. [dicere]
- .....

- *There are rumours* that Caesar has crossed the Rubicon. [audire]
- .....

- *The fight took place* under the rain. [pugnare]
- .....

**f) Impersonal passive and personal construction****1/ Read these sentences:**

- *Quot annos nata dicitur?* (Plautus, *Cistellaria*).
- *Sapienter fecisse dicitur* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Sanctissimus deus habetur, qui urbem illam dicitur condidisse* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Aristaeus inventor olei esse dicitur* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Corrupisse dicitur A. Cluentius iudicium pecunia* (Cicero, *Pro Cluentio*).
- *Iam Caesar a Gergovia discessisse audiebatur* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

**2/ Using the verbs given, translate each sentence into Latin twice, first using the impersonal passive form of the indicated verbs, and then making use of the personal construction:**

- Where do people say that Caesar lives? [dicere]

*Impers.:* .....*Pers.:* .....

- It seems that Cicero was a better orator than Catilina. [videre]

*Impers.:* .....*Pers.:* .....

- There was news that Hannibal had defeated the Romans. [dicere]

*Impers.:* .....*Pers.:* .....

- It seems that Marcus has sent the letter. [videre]

*Impers.:* .....*Pers.:* .....

## b) Subordinate clauses

### 1. The concept of *consecutio temporum*

[114]

a/ Choose the correct option:

▷ The rules of the *consecutio temporum* have to be applied if the main clause has a subordinate clause in...

1/ indicative mood

2/ subjunctive mood

b/ What is the difference between “primary sequence” and “secondary sequence”?

*Primary*: .....

*Secondary*: .....

c/ Fill these tables, writing inside each box “primary” or “secondary” inside each box      ♦ Remember that one of these tenses can be both primary and secondary.

Indicative

Present	Perfect
-----	-----
Imperfect	Pluperfect
-----	-----
Future	Fut. perfect
-----	-----

Subjunctive

Present	Perfect
-----	-----
Imperfect	Pluperfect
-----	-----

d/ With respect to the perfect indicative, in each pair of sentences, which has a primary meaning and which has a secondary one (the adverbs will give you the clue)? Then, translate them accordingly:

- Cicero in senatu hodie multa *dixit* / Cicero in senatu heri multa *dixit*.

.....

- Pompeius hoc anno omnes hostes *vicit* / Pompeius postero anno omnes hostes *vicit*.

.....

## 2. Causal clauses

[115]

a/ Read these sentences:

- Dumnorix Helvetiis erat amicus, *quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Quoniam fidem magistri cognostis, cognoscite nunc discipuli aequitatem* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Quia inopia minus largiri poterat, repente glorians maria montisque polliceri coepit* (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).



- In omni certamine qui opulentior est, etiam si accipit iniuriam, tamen, *quia plus potest, facere videtur* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Tu id semper facis, *quia semper potes* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Concedo, et *quod animus aequus est et quia necesse est* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Quia veniebat a Roscio, plus etiam scire quam sciebat videbatur* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).



- Haec tu non propter audaciam dicis tam impudenter, sed *quia tantam rerum repugnantiam non vides* (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- *Quoniam quaestor eius fuisti, non potes eum sine ulla vituperatione accusare* (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*).
- *Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

❖ The following sentences seem to be a little more difficult.

- Si qui furem occiderit, iniuria occiderit. Quam ob rem? *Quia ius constitutum nullum est*. Quid, si se telo defenderit?  
Non iniuria. Quid ita? *Quia constitutum est* (Cicero, *Pro Tullio*).



- Ego, non *quo libenter male audiam, sed quia causam non libenter relinquo*, nimium patiens et lentus existimor (Cicero, *De Oratore*).
- *Quaere, Hortensi, quoniam te recentia exempla delectant, quid fecerint* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Ita fit ut adsint propterea *quod officium sequuntur, taceant autem idcirco quia periculum vitant* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). ▷ Where is the harbinger in the main clause?
- Negant enim sapientem idcirco virum bonum esse, *quod eum sua sponte ac per se bonitas et iustitia delectet* (Cicero, *De Republica*). ▷ Where is the harbinger in the main clause?

**b/ Answer these questions:**

▷ In the previous sentences, could you mark the ones in which the subjunctive is used?

▷ Why is the subjunctive used in these sentences?

.....

.....

▷ And which of the previous sentences offer two causal subordinate clauses, one in indicative and one in subjunctive?

.....

.....

**c/ Translate into Latin:**

- We will give you a prize because you have won in the battle.

.....

- As you want to earn more money, you must work more.

.....

- I have come not because I want to see you, but because I want to listen to Caesar.

.....

- They were sentenced to death because they tried to kill the general.

.....



- Catullus was sad because Lesbia had left him.

.....

- I admire you not because you are clever but because you are brave.

.....

- The citizens praised him because he had defended the bridge.

.....

- I am happy because I have been appointed commander of the army.

.....

### 3. Purpose clauses

[116]

- ▷ What are the only two tenses used in purpose clauses?
- .....

#### a) Normal construction

1/ Read these sentences:

- Me a portu praemisit domum, *ut haec nuntiem uxori suae* (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- *Ut spatium intercedere posset*, dum milites quos imperaverat convenienter, legatis respondit ... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset*, pontem in Arari faciendum curat (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt, *ut spatium pila in hostes coniciendi non daretur* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Vercingetorix animo laborabat, *ut reliquias civitates adiungeret* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Ad subsellia cum ferro atque telis venistis *ut hic aut iuguletis aut condemnetis*? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

2/ Translate into Latin:

- I will send you money *so that you may buy food*.
- .....

- I work *to earn money*.
- .....

- They came back *so that they might capture the fugitives*.
- .....

- Catilina fled out of Rome *in order to join Manlius*.
- .....

- The senators plotted *in order to kill Caesar*.
- .....

- I will buy a sword *so that I may fight*.
- .....

- The senators went to Pompeius *to speak with him*.
- .....

### b) Construction with a comparative

#### 1/ Read these sentences:

- ... *quo iucundius*, id est *quo melius viveremus*, ... (Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*).
- *Socraten ferunt respondisse se, quo melius cenaret, obsonare ambulando famem* (Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes*).
- *Praesidia disponit quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Orant ut sibi praesidium mittat, quo facilius et frumentum et copiae suae conserventur* (anon., *Bellum Africum*).
- *Manipulos laxare iussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
[*manipulos laxare* TO OPEN THE RANKS]
- *Id quo facilius facere possitis, dabo operam* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

#### 2/ Translate into Latin:

- I work a lot *in order to live better*.
- .....

- He sent soldiers *in order to guard the bridge more easily*.
- .....

- I go to sleep early *to feel better the following day*.
- .....

- We will go to Rome *so that we may speak Latin better*.
- .....

- Young people must eat a lot *in order to be stronger*.
- .....

- The generals climbed the mountain *to see the army better*.
- .....

### c) Negative purpose clause

#### 1/ Read these sentences:

- *Omnem aciem suam raedis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinquatur* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Tomenta conlocavit, ne hostes suos circumvenire possent* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

- Monet ut ignes in castris fieri prohibeat, *ne qua eius adventus procul significatio fiat* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Ne quem post se hostem relinquaret, oppugnare instituit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Ne quis se commovere auderet, quantum terroris iniecit!* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

◇

- Vercingetorix re cognita, *ne contra suam voluntatem dimicare cogeretur, magnis itineribus antecessit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Hanc [epistulam] Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, *ne intercepta epistula nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Tollam altius tectum, non ut ego te despiciam, sed *tu ne aspicias urbem eam quam delere voluisti* (Cicero, *De Haruspicu Responso*).
- Subito separantur ceteri et in arcas coniciuntur *ne quis cum eis conloqui possit* (Cicero, *Pro Milone*).

2/ Change these sentences into correct Latin so that they observe the rule of applying the negative sense to the conjunction rather than to an adverb or pronoun:

- Celeriter fugit *ut nemo eum videret.*  
.....

- Illos libros delevit *ut senatores numquam eos legerent.*  
.....

- Te ex urbe mitto *ut nihil acerbum facias.*  
.....

3/ Translate into Latin:

- I ran *so that the enemy might not capture me.*  
.....

- I ran *so that nobody might capture me.*  
.....

- They closed the door *so that nobody might hear them.*  
.....

- Caesar surrounded the city *so that the citizens might not receive food.*  
.....

- I gave them money *so that they would say nothing.*
- .....

- The general placed guards *so that the besiegers might not enter the city.*
- .....

#### d) Other possibilities

Read these sentences:

- Tres adulescentes in Africam legantur, *qui ambos reges adeant* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Legatos ad eum mittunt *qui dicerent* ... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Equitatum *qui sustineret hostium impetum misit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

### 4. Temporal clauses

[117]

#### a) Main temporal clauses (Temporal clauses in the indicative)

1/ Link these conjunctions and combined expressions with their meanings (take into account that there may be more than one Latin word to mean the same thing in English):

WHEN / AS SOON AS / WHEN / BEFORE / AS SOON AS / WHILE / BEFORE / WHEN / AFTER

cum	.....	ut	.....
dum	.....	cum primum	.....
simul ac	.....	priusquam	.....
antequam	.....	postquam	.....
ubi	.....		

2/ Read the Latin temporal clause and, using the Latin one as a model, translate the English one into Latin:

- *Ea postquam Cirtae audita sunt, ...* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

After these events were known in the Senate, ...

.....

- *Ubi iam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, ...* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

When I thought that I was ready for the battle, ...

.....

- *Simul atque e navi egressus est, ...* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

*As soon as* he fled from the city, ...  
.....

- *Ubi de eius adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, ...* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

*When* the Romans were made aware of Pompeius' arrival, ...  
.....

- *Hoc cum primum Caesari ad Ilerdam nuntiatur, ...* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

*As soon as* this was told to me, ...  
.....



- *Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est tres iam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, ...* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

*When* through us he was made aware that they had destroyed the city, ...  
.....

- *Antequam ego in Siciliam veni, ...* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

*Before* they departed for Rome, ...  
.....

- *Caesar ubi intellexit frustra tantum laborem sumi ...* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

*When* we realised that we had won in vain, ...  
.....

- *Ille vero simul atque hoc audivit ...* (Cicero, *Pro Cluentio*).

*As soon as* they heard this, ...  
.....

- *Quod ubi Caesar animadvertis, ...* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

*When* they realised this, ...  
.....

3/ Do the same with these pairs (now there is also a main clause for each sentence):

- *Donec armati confertique abibant, peditum labor in persequendo fuit* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

*As long as they were behind the walls, we could not defeat them.*

.....

- *Ita de comitiis donec rediit Marcellus silentium fuit* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

*Until he came back, nobody spoke about the battle.*

.....

- *Mane dum scribit* (Plautus, *Bacchides*).

*You, wait while I finish this letter.*

.....

- *Cum primum M. Terentius in forum venit, ad amicitiam se meam contulit* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

*As soon as I came to Rome, I became a friend of Cicero.*

.....

- *Caesar, ubi luxit, omnes senatores ad se produci iubet* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

*Pompeius, when it became night, ordered the soldiers to leave.*

.....

4/ Translate this sentence:

*Fratris autem liberos prius vita privavit quam illi hanc a natura lucem accipere potuerunt* (Cicero, *Pro Cuentio*).

.....

5/ Now rewrite these Latin sentences splitting the temporal conjunction and redistributing it; then, translate each English sentence into Latin also splitting the conjunction:

- *Postquam aurum abstulimus, in navem conscendimus* (Plautus, *Bacchides*).

*After we took the books, we left the city.*

.....

- *Postquam tuo iussu profectus sum, perveni in Cariam* (Plautus, *Curculio*).
- 

*After she departed from Carthage, she came to Italy.*

---

### b) A curious use of the present indicative in past time

Read the Latin sentence (mind the tense of the temporal clause!) and translate the English sentence into Latin:

- *Dum gladiatores in circo pugnant, hostes in urbem celeriter intraverunt.*

*While we were playing with our friends, the teacher knocked on the door.*

---

- *Dum redeo domum, consecutus est clanculum me usque ad fores* (Plautus, *Cistellaria*).

*While I was talking to some people, he suddenly tried to kill the senator.*

---

### c) Temporal clauses in subjunctive

1/ Read the Latin sentence (make sure you realise why the verb is in subjunctive), answer the question (if any) and translate the English sentence into Latin, imitating the structure of the Latin one:

- *Ab urbe antequam proficisceretur, ...* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

▷ What would the clause mean, if the verb were in the indicative (*profectus est*)?

---

Before he would start speaking, ...

---

- *Priusquam plures civitates conspirarent, ...* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

▷ What would the clause mean, if the verb were in the indicative (*conspiraverunt*)?

---

Before more soldiers would flee, ...

---

- *Itaque priusquam quicquam conaretur, Diviciacum ad se vocari iubet* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

▷ What would the clause mean, if the verb were in the indicative (*conatus est*)?

.....  
So, before the enemy could surround him, he started running.

- [Debet] *bibere, donec sitim finiat, aquam calidam* (Celsus, *De Medicina*).

You must practise until you learn this language.

2/ In the next sentence, the verb of the temporal clause is also in the subjunctive, but because of another reason: do you see why?

*Is mortuus est C. Sacerdote praetore, nescio an antequam Verres praeturam petere coeperit* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

## 5. Concessive clauses

[118]

a/ What is the difference, in a concessive clause, between having its verb in the indicative or subjunctive?

.....  
.....

b/ When is quamquam used, and when is quamvis used?

.....  
.....

### a) Real objection: indicative

Read these sentences, observing that the concessive clauses have their verb in indicative, and using the Latin one as a model translate the English one into Latin:

- *Quod quamquam nec sapienter et me invito facit, ...* (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).

Although you will come to Rome against my will, ...

.....

- *Ego me etsi peccato absolvo, suppicio non libero* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

Although *I think* he is not very clever, I will appoint him senator.

---

- *Ac tametsi senatus minae graves nuntiabantur, ...* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

Although a great disaster *had been announced*, ...

---

- *Sed quamquam haec talia sunt, ...* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

Although these things *have already happened*, ...

---

- *Tametsi in ipso magna vis animi erat, ...* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

Although in my soldiers *there was* much bravery, ...

---

- *Etiamsi mihi iucundissimus est honos populi, ...* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

Although the hatred of the people *is* very sad to me, ...

---

### b) Possible objection: subjunctive

Now do the same with these other sentences, observing the difference of sense that the use of a verb in subjunctive gives to the concessive clause:

- *Quamvis ille felix sit, ...* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

Even if they *conquer* the enemy, I will not praise them.

---

- *Contra me ille dicet, quamvis sit ingeniosus* (Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*).

Although they *may be* clever, they will make this mistake.

---

- *Etiamsi taceant, satis dicunt* (Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*).

Even if you *complain*, you are accusing yourself.

---

- *Etiamsi lex non esset, ...* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

Even if we *did not have* this army, nevertheless we would win.

---

## 6. Result clauses

[119]

a/ Each pair of sentences contains a purpose clause and a result clause; can you distinguish them?

— Currit ut hostem capiat ..... / Tantum currit ut hostem capiat .....

— Multum legit ut omnia sciat ..... / Tantum legit ut omnia sciat .....

b/ What is the indicator in the main clause that allows you to foresee a result clause?

.....

c/ For each pair of sentences, identify the harbinger of the result clause in the Latin one and then translate the English one into Latin:

- Ego non sum tantum honorem habiturus *ut ad ea respondeam* (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*).

You will not have so much money *that you can buy the house*.

.....

- Praesidii tantum est, *ut ne murus quidem cingi possit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

The river was so wide *that it was not even possible to cross it*.

.....

- Tantum in latitudinem patebat, *ut tres instructae cohortes eum locum explerent* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

The width of the plain was *the same as the width of two deployed legions*. [↗ Rephrase it following the Latin one as a model.]

.....

- Tantos processus efficiebat *ut evolare, non excurrere videretur* (Cicero, *Brutus*).

The soldier ran so fast *that he seemed to fly*.

.....

- Nonne hoc indicant, tantas esse iniurias *ut multo maluerint decidere quam de tuis moribus non dicere* ? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

The mistakes are so many *that I prefer not to read this book*.

.....

d/ Do the same as before for these pairs of sentences, where the main Latin clause (in italics) is an impersonal expression. Apart from a subject, what do all these main clauses lack?

They lack .....

- *Accidit ut pauci milites recepti in Siciliam incolumes pervenirent* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

*It happened that the citizens fled out of the city.*

.....

- *Casu accidit ut id quod Romae audierat primus nuntiaret?* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

*Did it happen by chance that he was the first to arrive?*

.....

- *Fit ut adsint propterea quod officium sequuntur, taceant autem idcirco quia periculum vitant*

(Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

*They happen to be absent because they do not want to see you.*

.....

- *Fit ut veram illam et absolutam eloquentiam nemo consequatur* (Cicero, *Orator*).

*It happens that my sister can read this book within one day.*

.....

- *Fieri non potest ut lex hoc voluerit, ut a patre filius occidatur* (Quintilianus, *Declamationes Minores*).

*It is not possible that the Senate has decided this, that Octavius must be expelled out of the city.*

.....

e/ To finish, translate the beginning of the famous funny story “The widow of Ephesus”:

Matrona quaedam Ephesi tam nota erat pudicitiae ut vicinarum quoque gentium feminas ad spectaculum sui evocaret (Petronius, *Satyricon*).  
.....  
.....

## 7. Conditional clauses

[120]

a/ Write in which tense (if applicable) and mood the conditional clause would appear for each of these conditional periods:

- Real (also called "open"): ..... .
- Eventual (also called "remote"): ..... .
- Unfulfilled in the present: ..... .
- Unfulfilled in the past: ..... .

b/ Translate these sentences according to the conditional periods that they represent:

- If we see the general, we flee / Si ducem vidimus, fugimus.
- If we see the general, we will flee / Si ducem ..... , .....
- If we were to see the general, we would flee / Si ducem ..... , .....
- If we saw the general now, we would flee / Si ducem ..... , .....
- If we had seen the general, we would flee / Si ducem ..... , .....
- If we had seen the general, we would have fled / Si ducem ..... , .....

c/ Each one of these five sentences belongs to a different type of conditional period. Read them, observing the differences between them with respect to the degree of accomplishment of the condition:

- Si *hodie veneris*, *tibi libros dabo*. Type: .....
- Si *pecuniam nobis obtulissent*, *urbem non delevissemus*. Type: .....
- Si *epistulam nobis mittas*, *eam legamus*. Type: .....
- Si *consulem necares*, *omnes senatores te persequerentur*. Type: .....
- Si *meliora arma habuissemus*, *nunc victores essemus*. Type: .....

d/ Say to what type of conditional period each sentence belongs and translate it into Latin using the verbal tense and mood corresponding to that period (for some types there is more than one sentence):

- If Socrates *lied*, I *would not trust him* any more. Type: .....  
.....
- If you *want* to conquer the city, you *must have* more soldiers. Type: .....  
.....

- If you *should come* here, I *would show* you my city. *Type:* .....
- .....

- If you *had told* me this, I *would have gone* to the Senate immediately. *Type:* .....
- .....

- If you *want* to live, *flee away* now! *Type:* .....
- .....

◊

- If your brother *defeats* Caesar, the citizens *will give* him a prize. *Type:* .....
- .....

- If you *practised* more, you *would always win*. *Type:* .....
- .....

- If he *arrives* today, we *will have* dinner together. *Type:* .....
- .....

- If the Senate *should take* this decision, Catilina *would flee* immediately. *Type:* .....
- .....

- If the army *had come* to Rome, Caesar *would have been appointed* general. *Type:* .....
- .....

**e/ Read these sentences and say to what type of conditional each one of them belongs:**

- *Moriere, si emiseris vocem* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

*Type:* .....

- *Rem facilius totam accipietis, si haec memineritis* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

*Type:* .....

- *Si debuisset [pecuniam], Sexte, petisses* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

▷ By the way, *petisses* is a syncopated form; what would the full form be? .....

*Type:* .....

- *Si neglegentiam [causam esse] dices, mirabimur; si bonitatem, ridebimus* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

*Type:* .....

- *Profecto, si quid deberetur, peteret* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

Type: .....



- *Etenim si vult virorum bonorum instituto vivere, multa oportet discat* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

Type: .....

- *Si, quod tu semper summe cupisti, idem volebat Alfenus, ea re tibi cum eo par contentio non erat?* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

Type: .....

- *Si enim illud dices, improbe mentiri viderere* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

Type: .....

- *Quod tametsi miserum et indignum est, feret tamen aequo animo, iudices, si per vos vitam et famam potest obtainere* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

Type: .....

- *Quid faciam nunc, si tres viri me in carcerem compegerint?* (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).

Type: .....



- *Perii, si me aspexerit* (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).

Type: .....

- *Non edepol nunc ubi terrarum sim scio, si quis roget* (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).

◊ Observe the unusual combination of tenses.

Type: .....

- *Dic si quid vis, non nocebo* (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).

Type: .....

- *Quis ego sum saltem, si non sum Sosia?* (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).

Type: .....

- *Quid si e portu navis huc nos dormientis detulit?* (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).

◊ A curious example in which the main clause does not have any verb.

Type: .....



- Quid si *eamus* illis obviam? (Plautus, *Poenulus*). ◇ Same case as before.

Type: .....

- Si primo proelio Catilina superior aut aequa manu *discessisset*, profecto magna clades atque calamitas rem publicam *oppressisset* (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

Type: .....

- Si paulum modo vos languere *viderint*, iam omnes feroce*s* *aderunt* (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

Type: .....

- Si ita *esset*, multo pulcherrumam eam [rem publicam] nos *haberemus* (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

Type: .....

- Si *vincimus*, omnia nobis tuta *erunt*; si metu *cesserimus*, eadem illa advorsa *fient* (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

Type: .....

## 8. Relative clauses

[121]

### a) Introduction

1/ In these sentences, enclose the relative clause in brackets and underline its antecedent in the main clause. In some of the sentences the relative is not expressed in English: can you identify in which ones?

- Where are the boys that you have chosen as players?
- You have forgotten all I told you!
- The pencil with which you wrote the letter? I took it, here it is.
- One needs to be an idiot, to lose the grammar you bought yesterday!
- I was introduced to the person who had devised everything.



- Is this the purpose, o senators, for which we have been elected?
- Senators whose plan is to damage the nation should be expelled.
- I could never live in the city in which he lives.

- The method I use to teach French is really good.
- Please, take these books back to the shelf from which you took them.

**2/ Choose the correct answer:**

The relative and the antecedent must agree ...

**a/** in case    **b/** in gender and number    **c/** in gender and case    **d/** in case and number    **e/** in syntactical function

**b) Simple relative sentences**

**1/ Combine these sentences transforming the second one into a relative clause. The antecedent is in italics:**

✧ Example:    *Belgae proximi sunt Germanis.* Germani trans Rhenum incolunt    ⇒    *Belgae proximi sunt Germanis,* qui trans Rhenum incolunt.

- *Heri vidi tuum fratrem.* Tui fratri consul pecuniam dedit.
- .....

- *Nuper novum calamum emi.* Librum calamo scribere cupio.
- .....

- *Omnibus civibus donum dedit senatus.* Cives fortiter pugnaverunt.
- .....

- *Mihi placet in hac urbe vitam agere.* Hamilcar condidit hanc urbem.
- .....

- *Senatores novum ducem Caesarem creaverunt.* Caesar Gallos vicit.
- .....

- *Nunc Marcum video.* Ego doceo grammaticam filium Marci.
- .....

**2/ The same exercise again, but with more difficult sentences. Some of them are alterations of original ones (author and work are indicated just as the origin before the alteration):**

- *Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres.* Unam partium incolunt Belgae    (< Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
.....

- Certe ego libertatem experiar. Libertas mihi a parente meo tradita est (< Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).  
.....
- Qui sim, ex eo cognosces. Ego eum ad te misi (< Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).  
.....
- Ceteras insulas sub Atheniensium redegit potestatem. Insulae Cyclades nominantur (< Nepos, *Vitae*).  
.....
- Domitium proconsulem ex citeriore Hispania cum omnibus copiis arcessivit. Copias paraverat (< Sallust, *Historiae*).  
.....
- Quinquaginta talenta civibus suis donat. Talenta a Pharnabazo acceperat (< Nepos, *Vitae*).  
.....
- Eo tempore aeger erat vulneribus. Vulnera in oppugnando oppido acceperat (< Nepos, *Vitae*).  
.....

### 3/ for the following sentences,

- 1- Identify the syntactical function of the antecedent and its case;
- 2- Identify the syntactical function of the relative and its case;
- 3- Translate.

✧ Example: Puellas quibus libros dedisti heri vidi.

- 1- Antecedent: puellas (direct object, accusative).
- 2- Relative: quibus (indirect object, dative).
- 3- Translation: YESTERDAY I SAW THE GIRLS TO WHOM YOU GAVE BOOKS.

- Me, quem vos imperatorem Numidis posuistis, [is] clausum obsidet (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

- 1- .....
- 2- .....
- 3- .....

- Piso in provincia ab equitibus Hispanis, quos in exercitu ductabat, iter faciens occisus es (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

1- .....

2- .....

3- .....

- Ego iis finibus electus sum, quos maioribus meis populus Romanus dedit (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

1- .....

2- .....

3- .....

◊

- Tum Thraeces eas regiones tenebant cum quibus armis erat dimicandum (Nepos, *Vitae*).

1- .....

2- .....

3- .....

- Multitudinem, quam secum duxerat, in agris collocavit (Nepos, *Vitae*).

1- .....

2- .....

3- .....

- Imperium facile iis artibus retinetur, quibus initio partum est (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

1- .....

2- .....

3- .....

◊

- Post paucos dies L. Saenius senator in senatu litteras recitavit, quas Faesulis adlatas sibi dicebat, in quibus scriptum erat C. Manlium arma cepisse cum magna multitudine (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

1- .....

2- .....

3- .....

.....

- In iis erat Fulvius, senatoris filius, quem retractum ex itinere parens necari iussit (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

1- .....

2- .....

3- .....

- Postquam accepere ea homines, quibus mala abunde omnia erant, sed neque res neque spes bona ulla, ... (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

1- .....

2- .....

3- .....

◊

- Eius pontis, dum ipse abasset, custodes reliquit principes, quos secum ex Ionia et Aeolide duxerat, quibus singulis ipsarum urbium perpetua dederat imperia (Nepos, *Vitae*).

1- .....

2- .....

3- .....

.....

- Victi enim erant quinque proeliis terrestribus, tribus navalibus, in quibus ducentas naves triremes amiserant, quae captae in hostium venerant potestatem (Nepos, *Vitae*).

1- .....

2- .....

3- .....

.....

### c) Special uses of the relative

#### 1/ Connective relative

##### a/ Read these sentences:

- *Quod postquam Romae cognitum est ...* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- *In quis fuit M. Scaurus, de quo supra memoravimus* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- *Qui postquam Romam adventabant, senatus a Bestia consultus est* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- *Quibus mihi videntur ludibrio fuisse divitiae* (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- ... tuam petens amicitiam: *quam si ero adeptus, non minus me bonum amicum habebis, quam fortē inimicum ille expertus est* (Nepos, *Vitae*).

**b/ Replace the demonstrative pronoun hic, haec, hoc (in whichever form it appears) using the corresponding form of the relative in order to go back to the author's original sentence. For the sake of help, the demonstrative and the word to which the relative must be somehow related are marked in italics:**

- A patre exheredatus est. *Haec contumelia* non fregit eum, sed erexit (< Nepos, *Vitae*).
- 

- *Multa delicate iocoseque fecit: Haec referremus, nisi maiora potiora haberemus* (< Nepos, *Vitae*).
- 

- Is uxorem Acarnanam civem duxit, ex qua natus est *Themistocles*. *Hic* a patre exheredatus est (< Nepos, *Vitae*).
- 

- Postquam eum cum magna pecunia venisse senserunt, insidias fecerunt: *Hi* ea quae apportarat abstulerunt (< Nepos, *Vitae*).
- 

- *Haec gens iacet supra Ciliciam, confinis Cappadociae* (< Nepos, *Vitae*).
- 

- *Hi* cum ad flumen Ligerim venissent, ... (< Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- 

- *His rebus* Caesar vehementer commotus maturandum sibi existimavit (< Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
-

## 2/ Relative of characteristic

a/ Read these sentences and answer the questions:

- *Fuere qui exercitum in Africam mittendum [esse] censerent* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- *Nihil autem est molestum quod non desideres* (Cicero, *De Senectute*).
- *Fuere item ea tempestate qui crederent M. Licinium Crassum non ignarum eius consili fuisse* (Sallust, *Catiniae Coniuratio*).
- *Mandat ut suam quisque eorum civitatem adeat omnesque qui per aetatem arma ferre possint ad bellum cogant* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

▷ What would the sentence mean if *possunt* had been used?

.....

- *Constituunt ut ii, qui valetudine aut aetate inutiles sint bello, oppido excedant* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

▷ What would the sentence mean if *sunt* had been used?

.....

- *Iis qui primi murum ascendissent, praemia proposuit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

▷ What would the sentence mean if *ascenderant* had been used?

.....

b/ Write the supplied verb in the necessary form of the subjunctive:

- Nec fuit quisquam *qui praedae* ..... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [studeo]
- Sunt *qui Larentiam volgato corpore lupam inter pastores vocatam* ..... (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [puto]
- Soli centum erant *qui creari patres* ..... (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [possum]
- Quis est enim *cui ista via non* ..... ? (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*). [pateo]
- *Fuere qui auro corrupti elephantos Iugurthae* ..... (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*). [trado]

c/ Translate into Latin:

- That man is not the sort of gladiator who kills for pleasure.
- .....

- There are people who hate this book.
- 

- Who is there who does not realise the danger?
- 

### 3/ Relative of purpose

#### a/ Read these sentences:

- Delphos deliberatum missi sunt *qui consulerent* Apollinem (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- Quantum pecuniae quaeque civitas daret, Aristides electus est *qui constitueret* (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- [Caesar has given instructions for several actions to be performed] Ea *qui conficeret*, C. Trebonium legatum relinquit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- His paucos addit equites, *qui latius ostentationis causa vagentur* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Sex pedum murum *qui nostrum impetum tardaret* praeduxerant Galli (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Pollicetur L. Piso censor sese iturum ad Caesarem, item L. Roscius praetor, *qui de his rebus eum doceant* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

#### b/ Replace the conjunction *ut* by the necessary relative and then translate; the antecedent has been marked in italics:

- Mittitur L. Decidius Saxa cum paucis *ut loci naturam perspiciat* (< Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- 

- Novitate rei Curio permotus praemittit *equites*, *ut primum impetum sustineant* (< Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- 

- Romulus *legatos* circa vicinas gentes misit *ut societatem conubiumque novo populo peterent* (< Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- 

- *Praecones* dimittuntur *ut omnes eos proficiisci ante noctem iuberent* (< Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- 

- *Exploratores centurionesque* praemittit *ut locum idoneum castris deligant* (< Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
-

**c/ Translate into Latin:**

- I will send one of my friends to you so that he may give you the money.
- .....

- The Senate appointed an important man general so that he might lead the army against the Gauls.
- .....

**4/ Lack of antecedent**

**a/ Read these sentences in which a form of is, ea, id not written by the authors has been included in square brackets:**

- Semper in civitate, [ei] quibus opes nullae sunt, bonis invident (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- [Ei] Qui in classe erant, proficisci properabant (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- His litteris acceptis, [eos] quos advocaverat dimittit (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectabant, sed per se [ea] quae videbantur administrabant (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- [Eos] Qui frumenti causa processerant, tuto ad se recipit (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

▷ Now try to read the same sentences again but skipping the pronouns in square brackets.

**b/ Now do the opposite: include in each sentence the necessary form of is, ea, id before the relative:**

- An ..... qui incolumes resistere non potuerunt, periti resistant? (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Ubi satis explorata sunt ..... quae voluit, ... (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- Si non deduntur ..... quos exposcit diebus tribus et triginta – tot enim sollemnes sunt – peractis bellum ita indicit: ... (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- ..... Qui aetate ad bellum inutiles videbantur, vitam toleraverunt neque se hostibus tradiderunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- ..... Qui Volscorum effugere potuerunt, Antium petunt (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

## 5/ Inclusion of the antecedent in the relative clause

¤ Some of the sentences in this section could also be classified as "connective relatives".

a/ In these sentences, the relative is in italics; find and underline the antecedent inside the relative clause:

- Erant omnino itinera duo, *quibus* itineribus domo exire possent (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Mandat, *quibus* rebus possent, opes factionis confirment, insidias consuli maturent, caedem incendia aliaque belli facinora parent (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- Itaque horum adventu decem milia armatorum completa sunt, *quaes* manus mirabili flagrabat pugnandi cupiditate (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- *Quae* omnis pecunia postero tempore Athenas translata est (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- *Qua* victoria non solum Athenae, sed etiam cuncta Graecia, *quaes* sub Lacedaemoniorum fuerat imperio, liberata est (Nepos, *Vitae*).

b/ Rewrite each sentence removing the antecedent out of the relative clause and placing it into the main one (for some sentences more changes will be needed):

- Multis locis Germaniae triennium vagati ad Rhenum pervenerunt, *quas* regiones Menapii incolebant (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
.....  
• Iter in ea loca facere coepit, *quibus in locis esse* Germanos audiebat (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
.....  
• Non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, *quaes* civitas est in provincia (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
.....  
• *Quos* avus Conon muros ex hostium praeda patriae restituerat, eosdem nepos cum summa ignominia familiae ex sua re familiari reficere coactus est (Nepos, *Vitae*).  
.....  
• Sive casu sive consilio deorum immortalium, *quaes* pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
.....  
.....

## 9. Comparative clauses

[122]

### a) First type: Comparing through correlatives

1/ Read these sentences:

- Hic complures annos moratus, cum et rei familiari *tantum* operaे daret, *quantum* non indiligens deberet pater familias, ... (Nepos, *Vitae*). ☞ Always fulfill your duty ...
- Familiares eius ex urbe profugientes, *quantum* potuit, texit (Nepos, *Vitae*). ☞ ... and help your friends.
- *Quantum* poterimus, rerum exemplis lectores docebimus (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- Omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et *quotiens* quaque cohors procurreret, ab ea parte magnus numerus hostium cadebat (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

◊

- *Tantam* eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, *quantum* fuit diei spatium (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- [Eos] *tanto* spatio secuti, *quantum* cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Non est infitiandum [infitor = to deny] Hannibalem *tanto* praestitisse ceteros imperatores prudentia, *quanto* populus Romanus antecedat fortitudine cunctas nationes (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- Intellegetis enim nullis hominibus quemquam *tanto* odio *quanto* istum Syracusanis et esse et fuisse (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

2/ In these sentences add the necessary pair of correlatives choosing from the list. For the sake of help, in some cases a word in italics will indicate some relationship with the correlatives:

*tales - quales / tot - quot / quotiens - totiens / tales - qualis / tot - quot / totiens - quotiens*

- ..... enim dicimus, ..... de nobis iudicatur (Cicero, *De Oratore*).
- Permanent illi soli *qui* sunt ..... *pater* tuus, M. Scaure, fuit (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*).
- ..... *oratores* videri facit, ..... ipsi se videri volunt (Cicero, *Brutus*).  
☞ Talking about how to make somebody seem really good.
- Vide, *quot* *cyathos* [here, GLASS] bibimus. ..... *digiti* tibi sunt in manu (Plautus, *Stichus*).
- Illud soleo mirari, non me ..... accipere tuas litteras ..... a Quinto mihi fratre adferantur (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

- Cum dixisset deberi centum quadraginta libras, paulo post intulit duo talenta, per iocum dicens “debentur *talenta ..... , ego et tu sumus*” (Servius Honoratus, *In Vergilii Aeneidos Libros*). ↗ So, a talent was the equivalent to 70 librae.]

**b) Second type: “The more..., the more...”**

1/ Taking the Latin sentence as an example, translate the English one into Latin:

- Quo clarior erat, eo magis anxius erat (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

The richer he was, the more books he bought.

.....

- Quo gravior vero quaeque inflammatio est, eo magis leniri medicamentum debet (Celsus, *De Medicina*).

The stronger this gladiator is, the more enemies he beats.

.....

2/ Read these sentences, which are more difficult than the previous ones:

- Tenuitas hominis eius modi est ut *eo magis* eluceat *quo magis* occultatur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Est quiddam quod occultatur; quod *quo studiosius* ab istis opprimitur et absconditur, *eo magis* eminet et appetet (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Quo plus* propter virtutem nobilitatemque possunt, *eo minus* quantum possint debent ostendere (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

**c) Third type: Comparing two events through other ways**

1/ Real cases: Taking the Latin sentence as an example, translate the English one into Latin:

- Ut ante dixi...* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

As you can see, ...

.....

- Eo, *ut erat dictum*, ad colloquium venerunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

As it had been agreed, they went to the city.

.....

- *Ut praeceptum erat iurant* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

As it had been decided, they invaded Gaul.

---

- *Ita bonum publicum, ut in plerisque negotiis solet, privata gratia devinctum [est]* (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

All prisoners, as used to happen in that war, were sent to Rome.

---

## 2/ Now do the same with these pairs that deal with imaginary cases:

- *Tamquam si claudus sim, cum fusti est ambulandum* (Plautus, *Asinaria*).

I will go to the Senate, as if I wanted to see Caesar.

---

- *De Dolabella quod scripsisti suadeo videoas tamquam si tua res agatur* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

Hide this from your brother as if it were something important.

---

- *Cohors tota illa, quae plus mali Siciliae dedit quam si centum cohortes fugitivorum fuissent, ...* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

I received more money than if Caesar had given me his fortune.

---

## d) Fourth type: Comparing through idem

Taking the Latin sentence as an example, translate the English one into Latin:

- *Nobilis idem ac dives erat* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

That senator is as wise as [he is] cruel.

---

- *Sevius idem ac Marcus docebit* (Suetonius Tranquillus, *De Grammaticis et Rhetoribus*).

At the Senate I will say the same as you.

---

- Sevius *idem ac* Marcus docebit (Suetonius, *De Grammaticis et Rhetoribus*).

The emperor Nero did the same as Caligula.

---

- Quis huic rei testis est? *Idem qui* acerrimus adversarius (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

To whom did you give that? To the same one that was here yesterday.

---

- Nam si tibi antea displicuisset, *idem* fecisses *quod* anno post M. Piso (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

If I had been at the senate, I would have heard the same speech you heard.

---

## 10. Fear clauses

[123]

a/ Taking the Latin sentence as an example, translate the English one into Latin:

- Vereor ne putidum sit scribere ad te quam sim occupatus (Cicero, *Ad Atticum*).

I fear it may not be wise to tell him the truth.

---

- Atqui vereor ne istam causam nemo noscat (Cicero, *De Legibus*).

They fear that nobody may come back from the battle alive.

---

- Timeo ne non impetrem (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).

I was afraid they might not achieve it.

---

- Timeo ne peccare discam (Seneca senior, *Controversiae*).

I'm afraid that he will start committing crimes.

---

- Metui ne in me faceret impetum (Plautus, *Captivi*).

We were afraid that they might escape.

---

b/ Change these sentences from primary to secondary sequence:

- Metuo ne mixtum [vinum] bibam (Plautus, *Aulularia*).

Metuebam .....

- Non metuo ne quisquam inveniat (Plautus, *Aulularia*).

Non metuebam .....

- Metuo ne vexetur Epirus (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*). ↗ Cicero, always worried about Greece's destiny.

Metuebam .....

c/ Now do the opposite with these sentences: change them from secondary to primary sequence:

- An timebant ne tot unum superare non possent? (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).

- Id ne accideret timebam (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

- Veritus ex anni tempore et inopia aquae, ne siti conficeretur exercitus, Rutilium legatum cum parte equitum praemisit ad flumen (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

## 11. Indefinite clauses

[124]

### a) Indefinite clauses of repeated action

1/ Read these two sentences and then change them into repeated actions in the past:

- Hic cum venit extra ordinem vocatur (Cicero, *In Verrem*) ↗ It seems that Verres always received VIP treatment.

- Cum venit calamitas, tum detrimentum accipitur (Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*).

2/ Read these two sentences and then change them into repeated actions in the present:

- Cato ille noster, cum venerat ad se in Sabinos, ut ex ipso audiebamus, visere solebat ... (Cicero, *De Republica*).

- *Quaecumque* navis ex Asia, quae ex Syria, quae Tyro, quae Alexandria venerat, statim custodibus *tenebatur* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- .....

### b) Indefinite clauses of single action (“ever” clauses)

1/ Read these sentences:

- Lentulus, sicuti Catilina p<sup>r</sup>aeceperat, *quoscumque* idoneos credebat, aut per se aut per alios sollicitabat (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- *Quocumque* ire placet, ferro iter aperiendum est (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- Populus Romanus, *quascumque* urbis et agros manu ceperat, regi dono dedit (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- *Quocumque* intenderat, res advorsae erant (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- *Ubicumque* gratia, timor, voluptas ea corrupere, postremo servitus imposta est (Sallust, *Ad Caesarem de Re Publica*).
- Ego sic apud animum meum statuo: *cuicunque* in sua civitate amplior inlustriorque locus quam aliis est, ei magnam curam esse rei publicae (Sallust, *Ad Caesarem de Re Publica*).

2/ Complete these sentences, adding the necessary indefinite from the list. In some sentences, the word to which the indefinite is somehow related is in italics:

*quemcumque / quocumque / quotienscumque / ubicumque / quemcumque / quotienscumque /*

- Deos inmortales obtestor ut, [in whatever] ..... modo ages, ea res tibi reique publicae prospere eveniat (Sallust, *Ad Caesarem de Re Publica*).
- [As many times as] ..... in causa in nomen huius incidisti, totiens hunc et virum bonum esse dixisti (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).
- [Whatever] ..... *equitem* Romanum in provincia viderant, beneficiis ac liberalitate prosequabantur (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- [Wherever] ..... hoc factum est, improbe factum est (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- [As many times as] ..... dico, totiens mihi videor in iudicium venire (Cicero, *Pro C<sup>r</sup>uentio*).
- [Whomever] ..... rogaveris, hoc respondebit (Cicero, *Pro C<sup>r</sup>uentio*).

## 12. Proviso clauses

[125]

a/ Read these sentences:

- *Dummodo mihi veritatem dicas, loquere.*
- *Dummodo potentiam consequantur, omnia faciunt.*
- *Gratias tibi agam, dummodo mihi des aliquid.*
- *Dum publicis mandatis servias, Senatus tibi pecuniam dabit.*

b/ Complete these sentences choosing one of the options of the list:

*sequareis / moriar / superem / recites / metuant / sit / eat*

- Dummodo [I conquer] ..... pugnando, tu vince loquendo (Ovid, *Metamorphoses*).
- Accipe quodcumque est, dummodo non [it is] ..... amor (Ovid, *Epistulae ex Ponto*).
- — Morieris hodie. — Dummodo hac [I die] ..... manu (Seneca iunior, *Agamemnon*).  
↗ As long as it's you who kills me, it's OK.
- Non est turpe non consequi, dummodo [you persevere] ..... (Seneca iunior, *De Beneficiis*).
- Nil recitas et vis, Mamerce, poeta videri. Quidquid vis esto, dummodo nil [you recite] ..... (Martialis, *Epigrammata*).
- Dicatur sane electus esse a me, dum modo [he goes] ..... in exsilium (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).
- Oderint, dum [they fear] ..... (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*).

c/ What is strange in this proviso clause?

— Regna, dummodo invisus tuis. — Regnare non vult, esse qui invitus timet (Seneca, *Phoenissae*).  
.....

## 13. *Quominus* and *quin* clauses

[126]

a) Expressions of doubt

1/ Choose the right option:

▷ As a general rule, we use *quin* for an expression of doubt when the main clause...

a/ is positive

b/ is negative

c/ is indefinite

**2/ Read these sentences:**

- [Dixit] non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Neque abest suspicio quin ipse sibi mortem conciverit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Non cunctandum existimavit quin pugna decertaret (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Num ergo dubium est quin ei obtulerint hanc praedam? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Neque enim erat cuiquam dubium quin illa dixisset [haec] (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilium*).
- Nemini dubium est quin idem ille imperator plurimum possit (Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*).
- Dubiumne est quin ista omnis improbatio cogendae pecuniae causa nata sit? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

▷ In this last sentence, there is no negative word, but *quin* is used; why?

.....

**3/ Translate into Latin:**

- I do not doubt that she will win tomorrow.
- .....

- They did not doubt that you had arrived.
- .....

- Who can doubt that Vergil is a great poet? ☀ No negative word, but...
- .....

**4/ After each sentence, write in the form of a statement what is expressed as an expression of doubt:**

❖ Example: Non dubitabat Minucius, qui Sopatrum defendebat, quin iste illo die rem illam quaesitus non esset (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

Statement: *Iste illo die rem illam quaesitus erat.*

- Non dubito quin, tametsi nullus in te sensus humanitatis, nulla ratio umquam fuit religionis, nunc tamen in metu periculoque tuo tuorum tibi scelerum veniat in mentem (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

Statement: .....

- Potestis dubitare quin istum fortuna non tam ex illo periculo eripere voluerit quam ad vestrum iudicium reservare? (Cicero, *In Verrem*). ☀ Maybe he would have preferred to die!

Statement: .....

- Nemo dubitat quin multo maius sit novam [columnnam] facere (Cicero, *In Verrem*). ☀ Builders are always expensive.

Statement: .....

- Quaeso ut diligenter attendatis; profecto quin ita sit non dubitabitis (Cicero, *Pro Tullio*).

Statement: .....

- Neminem dubitare existimo quin illa damnatio cum causa Clienti vestroque iudicio coniuncta esse possit (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).

Statement: .....

### b) Expressions of prevention

#### 1/ Answer these questions:

- ▷ If the main clause is positive, the expression of prevention can be introduced by these two conjunctions:

..... .....

- ▷ And if it is negative, by these two:

..... .....

#### 2/ Translate into Latin:

- This will prevent me from going to the senate today.

.....

- Nothing prevents you from being present in the senate.

.....

- Caesar's death prevented me from becoming a general.

.....

- Nobody prevented me from speaking to the people.

.....

#### 3/ Read these two sentences:

- Numquid causae est quin ab iudicio abeas turpissime victus? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).

- Vir optimus Sex. Naevius hominem multis verbis deterret ne auctionetur (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*).

4/ All the expressions of prevention in the following sentences are introduced by *quominus*. Read them and decide in which ones you could replace *quominus* with *ne* and in which ones with *qui*.

- Non ea res me deterruit *quo minus* litteras ad te mitterem (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- Ne a C. Rusio quidem accusatore deterri potuit *quominus* inusitatis verbis uteretur (Cicero, *Brutus*).  
↗ When you want to speak your way, nothing stops you.
- Si etiam bonus erit vir, ne impedianc divitiae *quominus* iuvetur (Cicero, *De Officiis*). ↗ No help should be refused.
- Confessus est neque recusavit *quominus* legis poenam subiret (Nepos, *Vitae*). ↗ He accepted his fate.  
◊
- Neque exercitus neque moenia obstant, *quominus* vi sua penetrat (Sallustius, *Ad Caesarem de Re Publica*).
- Deterrire eum voluit *quominus* medicamentum biberet (Curtius Rufus, *Historiae Alexandri Magni*).
- Non veto *quominus* securi percutiatur (Seneca senior, *Controversiae*).
- Haec, Lucili virorum optime, *quominus* legas non deterreo (Seneca iunior, *Epistulae Morales ad Lucilium*).

## 14. Summary of the uses of *cum*

[127]

### a) With indicative

1/ Read these sentences:

- [Gellius] dixit in contione vestrum, si ego consul *cum fui* non fuisset, rem publicam funditus interituram fuisse (Cicero, *Post Reditum ad Populum*).
- Non illa mihi formosior umquam visa [est], neque *ostrina* (= PURPLE) *cum fuit in tunica* (Propertius, *Elegiae*).
- *Hic cum venit extra ordinem* vocatur (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Cum venit calamitas*, tum detrimentum accipitur (Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*).
- "Bene," inquit, "facitis, *cum venitis*" (Cicero, *Rhetorica ad Herennium*).
- *Metus cum venit*, rarum habet somnus locum (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae*).  
◊
- *Cum venit in medium spatium inter brumam et solstitium*, quod dies aequus fit ac nox, aequinoctium dictum [est] (Terentius Varro, *De Lingua Latina*).
- An illae aves, nisi *cum vicerunt*, canere non solent? (Cicero, *De Divinatione*).

- Muro quoque lapideo circumdare urbem parabat *cum Sabinum bellum coeptis intervenit* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- *Hoc cum audivit Arete a coniuge, mittit nuntium ad Iasonem* (Hyginius, *Fabulae*).
- Maxima sum laetitia affectus *cum audivi consulem te factum esse* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- *Cum pugnabant maxime, ego tum fugiebam maxime* (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).

2/ Find the example of an inverted cum in the sentences above.

.....

### b) With subjunctive

1/ Cum can have two meanings for each tense in the subjunctive. Fill in the boxes accordingly.

Choose between these options: — Concessive — Causal — Historic cum

Present	Perfect
.....	.....
.....	.....
Imperfect	Pluperfect
.....	.....
.....	.....

2/ Read these sentences:

- *Cum fumantis etiam nostras navis reliquissent, accedere incipiunt Syracusas* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- *Haec ergo cum virum extulisset, ...* (Petronius, *Satyricon*).
- *Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnoniogem Haeduum mittunt* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Haedui cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Moritur in Gallia Quinctius, cum adesset Naevius, et moritur repentina* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

## 3/ Complete each sentence with a verbal form from the list:

*esset perlata / accederent / redisset / esset / essent secuti / posset*

- Ad hoc consilium *cum plerique* [adopted] ..... , Histiaeus Milesius, ne res conficeretur, obstitit (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- *Huius cum sententiam plurimi* [had followed] ..... , Miltiades Chersonesum reliquit (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- Darius autem, *cum ex Europa in Asiam* [had returned] ..... , classem quingentarum navium comparavit (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- *Cum ipse pro se dicere non* [could] ..... , verba fecit frater eius Stesagoras (Nepos, *Vitae*).  
⇒ One of the saddest and most unfair episodes in the History of Greece.
- Huius de adventu *cum fama in Graeciam* [had been brought] ..... , miserunt Delphos consultum (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- Misit Susamithren et Bagaeum ad Alcibiadem interficiendum, *cum ille* [was] ..... *in Phrygia* (Nepos, *Vitae*).

## 4/ Now complete each sentence putting the given verb in the correct form:

*destituo / effugio / ago / divido / sum*

- *Cum praedam ex agris* [were taking] ..... , Latinus rex Aboriginesque armati ex urbe atque agris concurrunt (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- Tenet fama *cum fluitantem alveum, quo expositi erant pueri, tenuis in sicco aqua* [had put] ..... , lupam sitientem ex montibus qui circa sunt ad puerilem vagitum cursum flexisse (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- *Cum populum in curias triginta* [divided] ..... , nomina earum (Sibinarum feminarum) curiis imposuit (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- *Cum in magna gloria tota res Romana* [was] ..... , nuntiatum regi patribusque est in monte Albano lapidibus pluisse (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*)      ⇒ You'd better wear a helmet...
- Multi mortales *cum hostem* [had escaped] ..... in flumine ipso periere (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

## 5/ Translate into Latin:

- When they had killed all the men, they took all the money.
- .....

- When I had fled from the camp, I came across other soldiers.
- .....

- As the teacher had not given any instructions, the students didn't do anything.
- .....

- Although he spoke very wisely, he persuaded nobody.
- .....

- As he spoke very wisely, he persuaded everybody.
- .....

- When Orbilius was a teacher in Rome, Horace learnt the poems of Homer.
- .....

## 15. Summary of the uses of *ut*

[128]

### a) With the indicative

Read these sentences. Only three of them use *ut* as a temporal meaning.

- Est, iudices, ita ut dicitur* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Armis utatur, si ita necesse est, ut dicit, sui defendendi causa* (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Pausanias, ut audivit Argilium configuisse in aram, perturbatus venit eo* (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- Si universa, ut dixi, provincia loqui posset, hac voce uteretur* (Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*).
- Huic provinciae M. Fonteius, ut dixi, praefuit* (Cicero, *Pro Fonteio*).
- Ut Romam venit, narrat Naevio quo in loco viderit Quinctium* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

◊

- [Quinctius] configuit ad C. Flaccum imperatorem quem, *ut ipsius dignitas poscit*, honoris gratia nomino (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Aurum sumpsit, ut dicitis* (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- Moritur C. Quinctius qui tibi, ut ais, pecuniam debuit* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Nihil igitur debuit, ut tu ipse praedicas* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Quaesivit a te, statim ut Romam rediit, ...* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Quis sic dissolutus fuisset ut fuit Sex. Naevius?* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

### b) With the subjunctive

1/ Write the five meanings that *ut* can have with the subjunctive (taking into account that, although the translation may be identical, it can be debatable whether an *ut* clause belongs to one type or another):

.....

2/ Read these examples from Nepos:

- Accidit *ut Athenienses Chersonesum colonos vellent mittere* (Nepos, Vitae).
- Pythia praecepit, *ut Miltiadem imperatorem sibi sumerent* (Nepos, Vitae).
- Ex pacto postulat *ut sibi urbem tradant* (Nepos, Vitae).
- Cursorem eius generis, qui hemerodromoe vocantur, Lacedaemonem miserunt, *ut nuntiaret quam celeri opus esset auxilio* (Nepos, Vitae).



- Factum est *ut plus quam collegae Miltiades valeret* (Nepos, Vitae). ¤ The Athenians took the best decision.
- Post hoc proelium classem septuaginta navium Athenienses eidem Miltiadi dederunt, *ut insulas, quae barbaros adiuverant, bello persequeretur* (Nepos, Vitae).
- Ille persuasit populo *ut ea pecunia classis centum navium aedificaretur* (Nepos, Vitae).
- Deliberantibus Pythia respondit, *ut moenibus ligneis se munirent*. Id responsum quo valeret cum intellegerer nemo, Themistocles persuasit consilium esse Apollinis, *ut in naves se suaque conferrent* (Nepos, Vitae).

3/ Then also these from Cicero:

- Efficiam profecto *ut intellegatis nihil esse homini tam timendum quam invidiam* (Cicero, Pro Quinctio).
- *Ut alia omittam*, hoc satis est (Cicero, Pro Quinctio).
- An omnis tu istos vincere volebas qui nunc *tu ut vincas tanto opere laborant?* (Cicero, Pro Quinctio).
- Fieri non potest *ut, quem video te praetore in Sicilia fuisse, eum tu in tua provincia non cognoveris* (Cicero, In Verrem).
- Tibi instat Hortensius *ut eas in consilium* (Cicero, Pro Quinctio).
- Quod tibi natura dat *ut semper possis, id mihi causa concedit ut hodie possim* (Cicero, Pro Quinctio).

**4/ Translate into Latin using an ut clause:**

- It cannot be that we always have to ask them for help.
- .....

- I sent my son to the city so that he might buy food.
- .....

- I obey him as I would obey a general.
- .....

- May the senators grant that we can leave the city alive.
- .....

- I run so quickly that nobody beats me.
- .....

**16. Completive quod clauses**

[129]

**1/ Read these sentences and define the grammatical function of each quod clause in relation to its main clause:**

- Lacedaemonii legatos Athenas miserunt, qui eum absentem accusarent, *quod societatem cum rege Perse ad Graeciam opprimendam fecisset* (Nepos, Vitae).

Grammatical function: .....

- Hoc accidit, *quod repente omnes milites castris discesserunt*.

Grammatical function: .....

- Legatos Lacedaemonem miserunt, qui Lysandrum accusarent, *quod sacerdotes fani corrumpere conatus esset* (Nepos, Vitae).

Grammatical function: .....

- Hac sola causa vicisti, *quod strenuissime pugnavisti*.

Grammatical function: .....

- Multumque eorum opinionem adiuvabat, *quod sine iumentis impedimentisque ad iter profectos videbant* (Caesar, Bellum Civile).

Grammatical function: .....

- *Quod nunc hic ades, hoc multum mihi placet.*

Grammatical function: .....

- *Quod nemo te vidit pecuniam capientem, hoc putas te in iudicio adiuturum esse?*

Grammatical function: .....

**2/ Translate into Latin using a quod clause:**

- This, the fact that Caesar is here, will please the senators.

.....

- I hate this, that you always arrive late.

.....

- Something great happened, that Cicero accused him.

.....

- I have come because of this, that you are ill.

.....

### c) Infinitive clauses

## **1. General principles**

[130]

### a) The use of the infinitive

1/ Choose the correct answer:

How would you define an infinitive?

- a** / a noun    **b** / an adjective    **c** / an adverb    **d** / none of these

2/ Which of these English -ing forms would be translated by an infinitive in Latin? Underline them:

- I saw him *running*.
  - *Running* is good for your health.
  - — How did you achieve this? — *Working* a lot!
  - Please, stop *shouting*!
  - I prefer *reading* than *going* to the Colosseum.
  - She spends the afternoons in the library, *writing* her dissertation.

3/ Underline all the infinitives in these sentences from Cicero (*Pro Roscio Amerino*):

His de rebus tantis tamque atrocibus neque satis me commode dicere neque satis graviter conqueri neque satis libere vociferari posse intellego. [...] Fide sapientiaque vestra fretus plus oneris sustuli quam ferre me posse intellego. [...] Quod si perferre non potero, opprimi me onere offici malo quam id, quod mihi cum fide semel impositum est aut propter perfidiam abicere aut propter infirmitatem animi deponere.

### b) Infinitive clauses

For each sentence, identify the infinitive and its role, marking clearly what words (if any) depend on it and then translate the sentence:

✧ Example: Cives volunt novos consules eligere.

*Infinitive: eligere.*      *Role:* direct object (of volunt).

*Words that depend on it: novos consules.*

*Translation:* THE CITIZENS WANT TO CHOOSE NEW CONSULS.

- Neque vincere neque vinci sine tuo periculo possumus (Sallust, *Fragmenta Ampliora*).

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....

- Optimus quisque facere quam dicere, sua ab aliis bene facta laudari quam ipse aliorum narrare malebat (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....

- Vos servire magis quam imperare parati estis (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....



- Repente glorians maria montisque polliceri coepit (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....

- Rem publicam vexare soliti erant (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....

- Non modo id non dices, sed ne illud quidem tibi dicere licebit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....



- Funestum est a fortis atque honesto viro iugulari (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). Does it matter, by whom?

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....

- Voce supplici postulare a patribus coepit, ne quid de se temere crederent (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....

- Pulchrum est bene facere rei publicae, etiam bene dicere haud absurdum est; vel pace vel bello clarum fieri licet (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....



- Is demum mihi vivere atque frui anima videtur, qui ... praeclari facinoris aut artis bonae famam quaerit (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....

- Huic ne perire quidem tacite obscureque conceditur (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

Some people cannot choose even how they want to die.

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....

- Sex. Naevium defendant, si id est defendere (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

It seems that the defence was not very energetic.

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....



- Licuit vobis cum summa turpitudine in exilio aetatem agere (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....

- Postulat a Burrieno praetore Naevius ut ex edicto bona possidere liceat (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....

- Innocens, si accusatus sit, absolvvi potest; nocens, nisi accusatus fuerit, condemnari non potest (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).

*Infinitive:* ..... *Role:* .....

*Words that depend on it:* .....

*Translation:* .....

### c) Indirect statement

1/ Change the second given element into an infinitive clause so that it combines with the first one:

❖ Example: Cicero credit ... / Marcus in ludo est ⇒ Cicero credit Marcum in ludo esse.

- Cicero putat ... / Pompeius Romam it.

.....

- Marcus dicit ... / Pater domi cenat.

.....

- Claudia dicit ... / Cassius et Brutus Roma fugiunt.

.....

- Magister putat ... / Discipuli litteras legunt.

.....

- Caesar dicit ... / Ariovistus Galliam regit.

.....

**2/ Read these sentences:**

- In te satis esse animi perseverantiaeque arbitror (Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*).
- Iudicium esse, C. Aquili, non de re pecuniaria, sed de fama fortunisque P. Quincti vides (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Tribuni et centuriones falsum pavorem esse docuerunt (Tacitus, *Annales*).
- Dico senatoris esse boni semper in senatum venire (Cicero, *De Domo Sua*).
- [Illi] demonstrabant de re iudicium fieri oportere (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Quis hoc statuit, quod aequum sit in Quinctium, id iniquum esse in Naevium? (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

**3/ Now let's do the process backwards: for each one of the previous six sentences take the indirect statement (the infinitive clause) and put it into direct form:**

✧ Example: Dico magistrum cotidie in ludo docere.

*Infinitive clause:* magistrum cotidie in ludo docere

*Direct statement:* Magister cotidie in ludo docet.

- *Infinitive clause:* .....

*Direct statement:* .....

#### d) An unexpected agreement

Although the meaning of the two sentences in each pair will not be exactly the same, complete the second using the word in *italics*, but in a different case:

- Necesse erat Caesarem in proelio *audacem* esse / Necesse erat Caesari in proelio ..... esse.
- Licebat me in senatu *iratum* esse et Catilinam accusare / Licebat mihi in senatu ..... esse et Catilinam accusare.

### 2. What tense of the infinitive?

[131]

a/ Change the second phrase given into an infinitive clause so that it combines with the first one, and then translate the final result:

- Cicero putabat ... / Pompeius Romam it.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

- Marcus dicebat ... / Pater domi cenat.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

- Claudia dicebat ... / Cassius et Brutus Roma fugiunt.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

- Magister putabat ... / Discipuli litteras legunt.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

- Caesar dicebat ... / Ariovistus Galliam regit.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

b/ The same again, but now the verb of the second clause is in the future tense:

- Cicero putabat ... / Pompeius Romam ibit.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

- Marcus dicebat ... / Pater domi cenabit.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

- Claudia dicebat ... / Cassius et Brutus Roma fugient.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

- Magister putabat ... / Discipuli litteras legent.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

- Caesar dicebat ... / Arioistus Galliam reget.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

c/ And now both verbs are in the past tense:

- Cicero putabat ... / Pompeius Romam iit.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

- Marcus dicebat ... / Pater domi cenavit.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

- Claudia dicebat ... / Cassius et Brutus Roma fugerunt.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

- Magister putabat ... / Discipuli litteras legerunt.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

- Caesar dicebat ... / Ariovistus Galliam rexerit.

New: .....

Transl.: .....

**d/ Translate these sentences:**

- I think that the teacher is writing a book.

.....

- I think that the teacher has written a book.

.....

- I think that the teacher will write a book.

.....

- I thought that the teacher was writing a book.

.....

- I thought that the teacher had written a book.

.....

- I thought that the teacher would write a book.

.....

**e/ Read these sentences noting the temporal relationship between the main verb and the infinitive:**

- Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Scio plerosque ita scripsisse, Themistoclem Xerxe regnante in Asiam transisse (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- Is autem ait ad Artaxerxen eum venisse atque his verbis epistulam misisse (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- Sentio, iudices, vos pro vestra humanitate his tantis sceleribus breviter a me demonstratis vehementer esse commotos (Cicero, *Pro Cuentio*).
- A me magistratibus statui gratias esse agendas (Cicero, *Post Reditum in Senatu*).



- Deinde nummi numerati sunt Cornificio, quem scribam suum fuisse negare non potest (Cicero, *In Verrem*).  
↗ A good accountant is always useful.
- Ostendam primum causam non fuisse cur a praetore postulares ut bona P. Quincti possideres, deinde ex edicto te possidere non potuisse, postremo non possedisse (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Petitionem mihi te concessisse dixisti (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Litteras, quas me sibi misisse diceret, recitavit (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Nolite existumare maiores nostros armis rem publicam ex parva magnam fecisse (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- Absolutum iri Sopatrum videbat (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

f/ For each of the following sentences take the infinitive clause and rewrite it as a direct statement:

❖ Example: Dixi magistrum cotidie in ludo docuisse.

*Infinitive clause:* magistrum cotidie in ludo docuisse

*Direct statement:* Magister cotidie in ludo docuit.

- Erat aliis, quem ego inimicum mihi fuisse non dico (Cicero, *Post Reditum in Senatu*).

*Infinitive clause:* .....

*Direct statement:* .....

- Videbam, si vicisem praesentem adversarium, nimium multos mihi alias esse vincendos (Cicero, *Post Reditum in Senatu*).

*Infinitive clause:* .....

*Direct statement:* .....

- Intellegebam mihi cum illis una esse redeundum (Cicero, *Post Reditum in Senatu*).

*Infinitive clause:* .....

*Direct statement:* .....



- Intellegegetis enim nullis hominibus quemquam tanto odio quanto istum Syracusanis et esse et fuisse (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

*Infinitive clause:* .....

*Direct statement:* .....

- Arbitrantur se beneficos in suos amicos visum iri (Cicero, *De Officiis*).

↗ Having a good social reputation is always convenient.

*Infinitive clause:* .....

*Direct statement:* .....

- Quis hunc audet dicere aratoribus infestum aut inimicum fuisse? (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

*Infinitive clause:* .....

*Direct statement:* .....

**g/ Write the infinitive of the given verb in the requested form:**

- Neque adhuc consumpta est ista pecunia et est perspicuum non [future passive] .....  
(Cicero, *In Verrem*). [consumo]
- Animum adverti, iudices, omnem accusatoris orationem in duas [perfect passive] ..... partis  
(Cicero, *Pro Caelio*). [divido]
- Scitis consulatum mecum [perfect active] ..... Catilinam (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*). [peto]
- Neque ego umquam [perfect] ..... tale monstrum in terris ullum puto (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*). [sum]
- Sed quid opponas tandem, si negem me umquam ad te istas litteras [perfect active] .....?  
(Cicero, *Philippicae*). [mitto]
- Hos postquam Athenas [perfect active] ..... ratus est, ad magistratum senatumque Lacedaemoniorum  
adiit (Nepos, *Vitae*). [pervenio]

**h/ Do the same, but put the subject of the infinitive in the accusative:**

- Video non [tu] ..... [perfect passive] ..... improbitatis, sed illos damnatos esse caedis  
(Cicero, *In Verrem*). [absolvo]
- Mirantur tam brevi tempore [res Romana] ..... [perfect active] .....  
(Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [cresco]
- In vincla mercatores esse coniectos et in vincis [cives Romani] ..... [perfect passive]  
..... arguo (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [neco]
- [Brutus] ..... ut scribis, [future passive] ..... a me puto (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).  
[video]

- [Exercitus maximi] ..... saepe pulsos et [perfect passive] ..... dico terrore ipso impetuque hostium (Cicero, *Pro Caecina*). [fugo]
- Negamus [tu] ..... bona P. Quincti [perfect active] ..... ex edicto praetoris (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [possido]

i/ Change the direct statement into an infinitive clause depending on the first clause, so that you revert it to the original sentence:

- ..... nuntiant (Cicero, *Pro Cquentio*). / Interfectus est M. Aurius.
- Hoc concedas necesse est, ..... (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). / Ita tu caecus cupiditate et avaritia fuisti.
- ..... senserunt (Cicero, *In Verrem*). / Praetor commovit ex eo loco castra.
- ..... putas? (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*). / Quis locus Graeciae non diripietur?
- Dic nunc, si potes, .....! (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*). / Cluvius mentitus est.

### 3. Where there is no change of subject

[132]

a/ Translate these sentences into Latin without a subject for the infinitive:

- I think that I am a good citizen.

.....

- You think that you are a good citizen.

.....

- She thinks that she (same person) is a good citizen.

.....

b/ Now translate them again but this time with a subject for the infinitive:

- .....
- .....
- .....

c/ Read these sentences and change the main verb from 3<sup>rd</sup> to 1<sup>st</sup> person and make any other necessary corrections:

❖ Example: Putat se malum ducem esse.

Into 1<sup>st</sup> person: Puto me malum ducem esse.

- Iudicavit sibi pecuniam non deberi (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).

Into 1<sup>st</sup> person: .....

- Se similem esse Catilinae gloriari solet (Cicero, *Philippicae*).

Into 1<sup>st</sup> person: .....

- Angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

Into 1<sup>st</sup> person: .....

- Totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

Into 1<sup>st</sup> person: .....

- Ubi iam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, ... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

Into 1<sup>st</sup> person: .....

- Sperat se absolutum iri (Cicero, *Pro Sulla*).

Into 1<sup>st</sup> person: .....

d/ Change the direct statement into an infinitive clause depending on the introductory verb, so that you revert it to the original sentence:

❖ Example: Putat ..... / Malus dux sum ⇔ Putat se malum ducem esse.

- Sperabat ..... (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*). / Propediem magnas copias habebo.

- Catilina credebat ..... (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*). / Possum servitia urbana sollicitare.

- ..... dicebat (Cicero, *Pro Cluentio*). / Aedilitatem peto et invidiam timeo.

- Non nulli propter timorem, quod ..... arbitrabantur, discesserunt (Cicero, *De Domo Sua*). / In senatu tuto non sumus.

- Pericles Ephesius, homo nobilissimus, Romam evocatus est, quod ..... arguebatur (Cicero, *In Verrem*). / Auctor illius iniuriae fui. [❖ Use nominative construction.]

- A quibus ille ..... dixit? (Cicero, *De Domo Sua*). / Lapidibus percussus sum.

#### 4. Historical infinitive

[133]

a/ Read these sentences ignoring the gaps. Afterwards, change the verbs in brackets from the imperfect to the present infinitive so that they revert to the sentences originally written by the authors:

- Qua pergebat, urbis, agros [vastabat] ..... , praedas [agebat] ..... , suis animum, hostibus terrorem [augebat] ..... (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Igitur circiter Kalendas Iunias L. Caesare et C. Figulo consulibus primo singulos [appellabat] ..... ; [hortabatur] ..... , alios, alios [temptabat] ..... ; opes suas, inparatam rem publicam, magna praemia coniurationis [docebat] ..... (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- Neque tamen Catilinae furor minuebatur, sed in dies plura [agitabat] ..... : arma per Italiam locis opportunis [parabat] ..... , pecuniam ad Manlium quendam [portabat] ..... (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- Interea Manlius in Etruria plebem [sollicitabat] ..... (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- Postquam Antonius cum exercitu adventabat, Catilina per montis iter [faciebat] ..... , modo ad urbem, modo Galliam versus castra [movebat] ..... , hostibus occasionem pugnandi non [dabat] ..... (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).

b/ Translate this into Latin making use of the historical infinitive for the actions carried out by Catiline:

While Cicero was in Rome, Catiline collected supplies, encouraged his soldiers, prepared the weapons, sent messengers, killed his enemies, gave presents to his friends, and inspected everything.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

## 5. Exclamatory infinitive

[134]

a/ Read these sentences and change them into statements:

❖ Example: Discipulos libros non habere! ⇔ Discipuli libros non habent!

- Te aediliciam praetextam togam, quam frustra confeceras, vendidisse! (Cicero, *In Vatinium*).
- .....

- Ludibrio esse urbis gloriam, populi Romani nomen! (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- .....

- In portu Syracusano triumphum agere piratam! (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- .....

- Cedere e patria servatorem eius, manere in patria perditores! (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- .....

b/ Translate these sentences making use of the exclamatory infinitive:

- That I have to hear this!
- .....

- That you have killed your brother!
- .....

- That Caesar himself has to fight in the battle!
- .....

## d) Participle clauses

### 1. General principles

[135]

#### a/ Choose the right answer:

▷ How would you define a participle?

1 / as a noun    2 / as an adjective    3 / as an adverb    4 / as none of these

#### b/ Which ones of these English *-ing* forms would be translated as a participle in Latin?

- I saw her swimming.
- Studying is good for your knowledge.
- — How did you achieve this? — Working a lot!
- Please, start writing the letter.
- I prefer walking to sitting at home reading a book.
- She spends the afternoons in the library, writing her dissertation.

#### c/ Underline all the participles in these sentences from Cicero (*De Oratore*), including those that are used to form complex verbal forms:

Cogitanti mihi saepe numero et memoria vetera repetenti perbeati fuisse, Quinte frater, illi videri solent, qui in optima re publica, cum et honoribus et rerum gestarum gloria florerent, eum vitae cursum tenere potuerunt. [...] Ac mihi repetenda est veteris cuiusdam memoriae non sane satis explicata recordatio. [...] Ac mihi quidem saepe numero in summos homines ac summis ingeniis praeditos intuenti quaerendum esse visum est quid esset cur plures in omnibus rebus quam in dicendo admirabiles exstitissent; nam quocumque te animo et cogitatione converteris, permultos excellentis in quoque genere videbis.

#### d/ Add to each noun the requested participle of the given verb, in the specified tense and voice:

- militem    / pugno    [present active] .....  
.....
- urbis    / deleo    [perfect passive] .....  
.....
- pugna    / conficio    [future passive] .....  
.....
- consuli    / video    [present active] .....  
.....



- puerorum / scribo [future active] .....
- puellas / doceo [present active] .....
- exercitum / invado [future active] .....
- ducibus / eligo [perfect passive] .....
- rege / expello [perfect passive] .....

## 2. The participle is impersonal

[136]

a/ Translate these sentences into Latin using the present participle iens, euntis:

- When he was sitting under a tree, he saw me when I was going to Rome.

.....

- When I was sitting under a tree, I saw you when you were going to Rome.

.....

- When you were sitting under a tree, you saw her when she was going to Rome.

.....

b/ In each of the former sentences, the person going to Rome is a different grammatical person (WHEN I WAS GOING, WHEN YOU WERE GOING, WHEN SHE WAS GOING), but why do they all use the same participial form?

.....

.....

## 3. The temporal correlation

[137]

### a) Use of the present participle

1/ Combine both sentences by adding the information of the second one into the first one by using a present participle:

◊ Example: Puer legit. Puer ambulat ⇒ Puer ambulans legit.

- Cives mirantur. Cives oratorem audiunt.

.....

- Magister docet. Magister loquitur.
- 

- Audi quid dicat Epicurus. Epicurus moritur (Cicero, *De Finibus*).
- 

- Crassicius, Mustela, Tiro greges ducebant per forum. Crassicius, Mustela, Tiro gladios ostentabant (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- 

- Catilina in confertissimos hostis incurrit ibique confoditur. Catilina ibi pugnat (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- 

- Ille ipsius Sex. Naevi manum prehendit. Ille lacrimat (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- 

**2/ Fill in the gap with the present participle of the given verb making it agree with the noun in italics:**

- *Lucretiam* ..... maestam in cubiculo inveniunt (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [sedeo]
- Stricto gladio ad ..... *Lucretiam* venit (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [dormio]
- *Legati* in Africam ..... veniunt (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*). [maturo]
- *Manlius et Faesulanus* in primis ..... cadunt (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*). [pugno]
- Occiditur ad balneas Pallacinas ..... a cena *Sex. Roscius* (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [redeo]
- Tertium iam *hunc* annum ..... inimici interfecerunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [regno]

**3/ Combine both sentences by adding the information of the second one into the first one by using a present participle:**

❖ Example: Puer videt puellam. Puella scribit ⇔ Puer videt puellam sribentem.

- Cotidie loquor cum discipulis. Discipuli linguam Latinam in ludo discunt.
- 

- Postea video amicum meum. Amicus meus librum de Italia scribit.
-

- Hoc dedi senatori. Senator multos filios habet.
- .....

- Video domum fratris. Frater in agros laborat.
- .....

- Cicero Catilinae non favet. Catilina coniurationem parat.
- .....

**4/ Read these sentences and say which verb each participle is from:**

- Marium, iam in hiberna proficiscentem, invadunt (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

*Participle:* From the verb .....

- Q. Titurius cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

*Participle:* From the verb .....

- Tandem aliquando, Quirites, L. Catilinam, furentem audacia, scelus anhelantem, pestem patriae nefarie molientem, vobis atque huic urbi ferro flammatum minitantem ex urbe vel eieimus (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).

*Participle:* From the verb .....

- Quis eum contra patriam pugnantem perisse miratur? (Cicero, *Pro Sulla*).

*Participle:* From the verb .....

- Aliquot enim in causis eum videram frustra litigantem (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).

*Participle:* From the verb .....

### b) Use of the future participle

**1/ Combine both sentences by adding the information of the second one into the first one by using a future participle:**

❖ Example: Puer videt puellam. Puella sribet ⇔ Puer videt puellam scripturam.

- Gladiatores Caesarem salutant. Gladiatores morientur.
- .....

- Libros do discipulis. Discipulis legent.
- .....

- Caesar hortatur milites. Milites pugnabunt.
- .....

- Video fratrem oratoris. Orator contionem habebit.
- .....

- Cicero loquitur cum senatoribus. Senatores Catilinam ex urbe expellent.
- .....

2/ Fill in the gap with the future active participle of the given verb making it agree with the noun in italics:

- *Galli* multitudine ingenti ad Clusium venerunt legionem Romanam castraque ..... (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

[oppugno]

- *Victores* circumsidunt urbem, haud dubie postero die aut metu dedituris se hostibus aut vi .....

(Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [expugno]

- *Quosdam* audio .....: "Legati proficiscantur" (Cicero, *Philippicae*). [dico]

- Atque haec dico de ..... rebus, quod est amicorum ante dicere ea quae vitari possint  
(Cicero, *Philippicae*). [sum]

▷ Which of these sentences have a purpose meaning?

.....

### c) Use of the perfect (also called *past*) participle

1/ Combine both sentences by adding the information of the second one into the first one by using a perfect participle:

❖ Example: Puer videt urbem. Milites deleverunt urbem ⇔ Puer videt urbem a militibus deletam.

- Hoc legi in libro. Cicero librum scripsit.
- .....

- Tuam epistulam heri accepi. Mihi epistulam misisti.
- .....

- Hic miles necatus est hasta. Hostis hastam iecit.
- .....

- Ego poto vinum. Dominus mihi vinum praebuit.
- .....

- Heri cum consulibus locutus sum. Cives consules expulerunt.
- .....

**2/ Write the perfect participle of the given verb so that it agrees with the word in italics:**

- *Milites Romani*, ..... tumultu insolito, arma capere alii, alii se abdere (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).  
[percutio]

- M. Iunius, *homo* et in aliis causis ..... et in hac multum ac saepe ....., hoc tempore abest  
(Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [exercito] [vensor]

- ..... sane discedit *Quinctius* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [conturbo]

- Iam *tu* potes ..... discedere (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [libero]

- Multis ..... contumeliis, plurimis ..... iniuriis *ille* configuit (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [vexo] [iacto]



- *Culpa liberatus* et crimen nefario ..... cupit a vobis discedere (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [solvo]

- Reus in iudicium adductus est C. Verres, *homo* omnium iam opinione ..... (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [damno]

- Intellegit *me* ita ..... atque ..... in iudicium venire ut ... (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [paro] [instruo]

- Temporis satis habui ut *rem tantam*, tot controversiis ..... possem cognoscere (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).  
[implico]



- Queruntur Siculi universi; ad meam fidem, *quam* habent ..... iam et ....., configunt  
(Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*). [specto] [cognosco]

- Olympum vi, copiis, consilio, virtute cepit, *urbem antiquam* et omnibus rebus ..... et .....  
(Cicero, *In Verrem*). [augeo] [orno]

- Audistis *quaestoriam rationem*, tribus versiculis ..... (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [refero]

- *Omnis Italiae partis* illorum donis ac monumentis ..... videmus (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [exorno]  
↗ Be careful with this one, it is more difficult than it seems.

**3/ Read these sentences and say which verb each participle is from:**

- Minuisti copias maiorum virtute ac sapientia comparatas (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

*Participle:* From the verb .....

- Quis tantam inconstantiam rerum iudicatarum ferre potuisset? (Cicero, *Pro Cn. Crassu*).

*Participle:* From the verb .....

- Totum iter mihi incertum facit exspectatio litterarum vestrarum Kal. Sext. datarum (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).

*Participle:* From the verb .....

- Quos ego campos antea collisque nitidissimos viridissimosque vidi semper, hos ita vastatos nunc ac desertos videbam (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

*Participle:* From the verb .....

- Eos iam bene cognitos et re probatos secum in Siciliam duxit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

*Participle:* From the verb .....

## 4. Participle as a verb

[138]

**a/ Replace the participial clause with a subordinate clause:**

✧ Example: Video puerum currentem ⇒ Video puerum qui currit.

△ *Sentences with a present participle:*

- Cn. Pompei bella, victorias, triumphos, admirantes numerabamus (Cicero, *Pro Rege Deiotaro*).

- .....
- Placet igitur mihi, patres conscripti, eis qui una pugnantes occiderint monumentum fieri quam amplissimum (Cicero, *Philippicae*).

- .....
- Una fingendi est ars, in qua praestantes fuerunt Myro, Polyclitus, Lysippus, qui omnes inter se dissimiles fuerunt (Cicero, *De Oratore*).

- .....
- Apud Xenophontem autem moriens Cyrus maior haec dicit (Cicero, *Cato Maior De Senectute*).

.....

- Bonum publicum simulantes pro sua quisque potentia certabant (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- 

△ *Sentences with a perfect participle:*

- Iubet me scyphos sigillatos ad praetorem statim adferre (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- 

- Ei denique qui tum armati dies noctesque concursabant, ... (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- 

- Nunc populati atque vexati cuncti ad me publice saepe venerunt (Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*).
- 

- Diffidebam satis animo certo et confirmato me posse in hac causa consistere (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- 

- Ante Carthaginem deletam populus et senatus Romanus placide modesteque inter se rem publicam tractabant (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- 

b/ Replace the subordinate clause with a participial clause:

✧ Example: Video magistrum quae docet ⇔ Video magistrum docentem.

- Pueri quos tu docuisti multa sciunt.
- 

- Nos, qui scimus veram causam belli, pugnare nolumus.
- 

- Postquam urbem cepimus, delevimus.
- 

- Venimus ut pugnemus.
- 

- Postquam necatus est, multi cives Caesarem laudaverunt.
-

- Cum moriretur, Tiberius suis militibus multa dixit.
- 

- Hoc donum tibi, quem omnes amant, do.
- 

## 5. Participle as a noun

[139]

a/ Read these sentences and replace the participle with a relative clause while making any other necessary changes:

- In senatu audivi de factis.
- 

- Scribentes semper multum laborant.
- 

- Necesse est iuvare laborantes.
- 

- Da hoc, queso, venientibus.
- 

- Fugientes numquam laudantur.
- 

b/ Translate into Latin using a participle for the words in italics:

- I hate *those who always talk* in the senate.
- 

- *Those who have been killed* in the battle were really brave.
- 

- Everybody has heard about *the exploits* of Caesar.
- 

- I told the news *to those who were writing* a letter.
- 

- Have you got the books *of the one who teaches* in this school?
-

## 6. The ablative absolute

[140]

### a) Normal use

1/ Change the underlined clause into an ablative absolute:

✧ Example: Cum Caesarem necavissent, Brutus et Cassius fugerunt ⇒ *Caesare necato*, Brutus et Cassius fugerunt.

- Postquam pontem deleverunt, milites putabant se salvos esse.
- .....

- Dum magister in ludo laborabat, aliqui pueri in foro erant.
- .....

- Cum pecuniam accepissent, hostes Romam reliquerunt.
- .....

- Postquam proelium perfectum esset, dux laudatus est.
- .....

- Quamquam ego patrem adiuvabat, tu nihil faciebas.
- .....

2/ Write the participle of the given verb so that it agrees with the underlined word and produces an ablative absolute:

- Paucis ..... diebus Sex. Tarquinius inscio Collatino cum comite uno Collatiam venit  
(Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [intericio]

- Igitur ..... die proruunt fossas (Tacitus, *Annales*). [orior]

- Postquam ..... regno legati Africa decessere, ... (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*). [divido]

- Quorum Iugurtha ..... oratione respondit (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*). [accipio]

- Dolabella, qui nefarie Trebonio ..... Asiam occupavit, ... (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*). [occido]

- Res publica in possessione victoriae ..... sceleratis permanebit (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).  
[deleo]

**3/ Change the ablative absolute into a subordinate clause:**

- ◊ Example: *Ianua fracta, pueri fugere potuerunt* ⇔ *Postquam ianuam fregerunt, pueri fugere potuerunt.*
  - *Neque enim dubitabant deletis exercitibus hostem ad oppugnandam Romam venturum [esse]* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- 

- *Vos tot milibus civium Romanorum uno nuntio atque uno tempore necatis quo tandem animo esse debetis?* (Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*).
- 

- *Magno itinere confecto ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- 

- *Id paucis defendantibus expugnare non potuit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- 

- *Duce hostium occiso urbem primo impetu capit* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- 

◊

- *Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis in ditionem Suessiones accepit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- 

- *His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- 

- *Germanico bello confecto multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- 

- *Hamilcare occiso ille exercitui praefuit resque magnas gessit* (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- 

- *Caesar, equitatu praemissa, subsequebatur omnibus copiis* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
-

**b) The type *Cicerone consule***

**1/ Translate the English into Latin by means of an ablative absolute:**

- When I was consul, Roma cotidie crescebat. ....
- If you are the general, procul dubio nos victuros esse. ....
- When you were a teacher, discipuli multa discebant. ....
- During the rule of Tarquinius, cives infelices erant. ....
- With Germanicus as praetor, milites laeti erant. ....

**2/ Find the ablative absolute and replace it with a subordinate clause:**

✧ Example: Me puerō Marcus Romae habitabat ⇔ Cum ego puer essem, Marcus Romae habitabat.

- Resistam atque repugnabo neque patiar a quoquam populum Romanum de suis possessionibus me consule demoveri (Cicero, *De Lege Agraria*).  
.....

- Templum illud fuit te consule arx civium perditorum, receptaculum veterum Catilinae militum (Cicero, *In Pisonem*).  
.....

- Censu habitus est te praetore (Cicero, *In Verrem*).  
.....

- Vir praestantissimus et ornatissimus, L. Aelius, est te consule relegatus (Cicero, *In Pisonem*).  
.....

- L. Octavio et C. Cottae consulibus senatus permisit ut ... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).  
.....

**3/ Fill in the gaps with the phrase in brackets as an ablative absolute:**

- Ita ..... illi domum discedunt (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*). [res infectae erant]
- Tenuerunt enim ..... illum locum servi, fugiti, barbari, hostes (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [P. Popilius et P. Rupilius consules erant]
- Quod ager Syracusanus praedonum incendiis ..... vastatus est? (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [tu praetor eras]

- Itaque inter se cohortati ..... per medios hostes perrumpunt  
(Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [C. Trebonius eques Romanus dux erat]

### c) Reasons for its abundance

1/ Translate these sentences into Latin. Observe how there is no way of translating the underlined part with a participle unless it is in an ablative absolute:

- Having written the letter, the senator left Rome.

.....

- After killing his brother, Romulus founded a city.

.....

- When she had announced the victory, she went to the senate.

.....

- Once the boy had read the book, he went to his friends.

.....

2/ But you can translate these sentences into Latin using a participle agreeing with the subject:

- Having encouraged his soldiers, the general gave orders.

.....

- After talking to her students, the teacher went out of the building.

.....

- Having advanced, the horsemen saw the enemy.

.....

3/ Why do we have to use an ablative absolute for the first group and not for the second?

.....

.....

#### d) Common expressions

Translate the brackets using an ablative absolute and fill in the gaps:

- [If the emperor is absent] ..... , legiones non audent ex hibernis egredi.
- [After this news had been announced to Caesar] ..... , in Transalpinam Galliam profectus est (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- A me suscepta defensio est [when you were absent] ..... dignitatis tuae (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- [After this news had been announced] ..... , Afranius discedit seque in castra recipit (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

◇

- [When this battle had taken place] ..... pontem in Arari faciendum curat atque ita exercitum traducit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- [After the attack] ..... celeriter nostros perturbaverunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Cornelius omnis [in my absence] ..... meos sublevavit (Cicero, *Pro Balbo*).
- Eo die [after a light attack] ..... , perspecto urbis situ, quae posita in altissimo monte omnes aditus difficiles habebat, de oppugnatione desperavit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

### e) Indirect speech

#### 1. (unapplied in this book)

#### 2. Indirect statement clauses

[141]

##### a) Main concept

1/ Put these direct statements into indirect form introduced by Magistra dicit:

↗ Example: Discipuli in horto sunt ⇒ Magistra dicit discipulos in horto esse.

- Puer est in foro.
- .....

- Pater emit multos libros.
- .....

- Mater cum consule loquitur.
- .....

- Octavia ad ludum currit.
- .....

- Haec urbs a Romulo condita est.
- .....

2/ Do the same again, but now the verb of each sentence is in the past tense:

- Antonius in proelio Catilinam vicit.
- .....

- Tu librum scripsisti.
- .....

- Heri in circo fui.
- .....

- Mea soror Romam iit.
- .....

- Oratorem audivimus in senatu.
- .....

**3/ And now they are in the future tense:**

- Cras Romanam ibo.
- .....

- Magnus orator eris.
- .....

- Pecuniam inveniam et tibi dabo.
- .....

- Ad Graeciam navigabo.
- .....

- Galli urbem capient.
- .....

**4/ Now do the same with these sentences, which you have already seen, but introduce the indirect statement with Magistra dixit and observe the difference in the translation of the infinitive:**

- Ad Graeciam navigabo.
- .....

- Haec urbs a Romulo condita est.
- .....

- Antonius in proelio Catilinam vicit.
- .....

## 5/ Read these sentences from Cicero:

- Dixit hunc ne in convivio quidem ullo fere interfuisse (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Civem Romanum securi percussum esse dixit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Dixit multos civis Romanos morte esse multatos (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Quaestorem se in senatu exspectare dixit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Primo dixit se istum publice laudare (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Rogavi pervenissentne Agrigentum; dixit pervenisse (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

## 6/ Add the infinitive of the given verb so that it corresponds with the English expression (which has been translated in accordance with the whole structure):

- Puer nuntiavit venire ad eum Laelium domoque iam [had gone out] ..... (Cicero, *De Republica*). [exo]
- Nuntiavit bellum domesticum triste ac turbulentum [would be] ..... (Cicero, *De Divinatione*). [esse]
- Currens Lepta venit mihique nuntiavit te iam castra [had passed by] .....  
(Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*). [praetergredior]
- Mihi nuntiavit te plane febri [lacked] ..... et belle [were] .....  
(Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*). [careo] [habeo]
- Is omnino mentionem nullam [had been made] ..... nuntiavit (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*). [facio]
- Credo ego vos, iudices, [wonder] ..... quid sit (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [miror]

## 7/ Now let's work backwards: reproduce the direct statement, disregarding the introductory expression:

✧ Example: Scio te heri venisse ⇔ Tu heri venisti.

- Credo te negaturum [esse] (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- .....

- De hisce omnibus rebus me dicere oportere intellego (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- .....

- Nemo umquam sapiens proditori credendum [esse] putavit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- .....

- Ille, civis Romanus quod erat, impunius id se facturum [esse] putavit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- .....

- Ego nunc illa dicam quae vobis in mentem venire certo scio (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).
- .....

- Scio te edicta superiorum omnium correxisse (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- .....

- Haec omnia facta esse certo scio (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- .....

b) (unapplied in this book)

c) Negative statement

1/ Translate these pairs of sentences using **dico** for the first and **nego** for the second:

- I do not say that you were here yesterday / I say that you were not here yesterday.
- .....
- .....

- Caesar did not say that Pompeius wanted to flee / Caesar said that Pompeius did not want to flee.
- .....
- .....

- His wife did not say that she had read this book / His wife said that she had not read this book.
- .....
- .....

- The students do not say that they want to go home / The students say that they do not want to go home.
- .....
- .....

## 2/ Read these sentences:

- Nego istam adoptionem pontificio iure esse factam (Cicero, *De Domo Sua*).
- Ego me, quasi malis architectis, mensurae vestrae nego credere (Cicero, *Lucullus*).  
↗ It seems that somebody did not know how to measure...
- At ego id ipsum nego posse intellegi (Cicero, *De Divinatione*).
- Tum ille, ut aliquid responderet, negavit moris esse Graecorum ut in convivio virorum accumberent mulieres (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Negavit quemquam esse in civitate praeter se qui id efficere posset (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- Negavit sese omnino versuram ullam fecisse Romae (Cicero, *Pro Flacco*).

## 3/ Now let's work backwards: reproduce the direct statement, disregarding the introductory expression:

❖ Example: Dux negat hunc militem strenue pugnavisse ⇒ Hic miles strenue non pugnavit.

- Negavit a privato pecuniam in provincia praetorem petere oportere (Cicero, *Pro Flacco*).
- 

- Negavit se triumphi cupidum umquam fuisse (Cicero, *In Pisonem*).
- 

- Accessi ad aedes. Puerum vocavi. Respondit. Quaesivi dominum. Domi negavit esse (Cicero, *De Inventione*).
- 

- Negavi me scire (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- 

- Negavit te potuisse ad me scribere (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- 

- Negavi putare me illa esse vera (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
-

#### d) Verbs that can be followed by an indirect statement

Write the perfect tense of each verb and use it to introduce the direct statement, given in brackets, as an indirect one:

- Arbitror ..... [Tu hunc librum legis]

.....

- Cognosco ..... [Tu hunc librum leges]

.....

- Credo ..... [Tu hunc librum legisti]

.....

- Intellego ..... [Magistra Romam it]

.....

- Reor ..... [Magistra Romam iit]

.....

- Scio ..... [Magistra Romam ibit]

.....

### 3. Indirect command clauses

[142]

#### a) Indirect commands

1/ Write the perfect tense of these verbs which introduce indirect commands:

hortor ..... moneo ..... persuadeo .....

impero ..... oro ..... rogo .....

▷ Two of these verbs rule a dative: which ones? .....

2/ Change these indirect commands introduced by iubeo into indirect commands introduced by the given verb:

✧ Example: Iubeo te venire [moneo] ⇔ Moneo te ut venias.

- Cicero iussit senatum contra Catilinam pugnare. [persuadeo]

.....

- Magister iubebit discipulos omnia discere. [impero]
- 

- Dux iubet captivos arma tradere. [oro]
- 

- Claudia iubet filium in forum ire. [hortor]
- 

- Hostes iubent cives portas urbis aperire. [moneo]
- 

- Caesar iussit suos hostibus parcere. [rogo]
- 

### 3/ Read these examples:

- Coepit hortari lugentem ne perseveraret in dolore supervacuo (Petronius, *Satyricon*).
- Moneo hortorque vos, ne tantum scelus impunitum omittatis (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Rogat, finem orandi faciat (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Imperavit ut ceteros milites dimitteret Romam (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- Archelaus rex Socratem rogavit, ut ad se veniret (Seneca senior, *Controversiae*).
- Monui regem ut omnem diligentiam ad se conservandum adhiberet (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- Hortatur ut inimicis eius resistat (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

### 4/ Put these indirect commands introduced by iubeo into indirect commands introduced by impero:

- Ignem ex lignis viridibus atque umidis in loco angusto fieri iussit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

↗ Possibly some burlesque information about not knowing how to light a fire.

---

- Pontem qui erat ad Genavam iubet rescindi (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- 

- Haluntinum, hominem non solum domi, sed tota Sicilia in primis nobilem, vocari iussit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
-

- Prendi hominem iussit ad Scaurumque deduci (Cicero, *Pro Rege Deiotaro*).
- .....

5/ Now do the opposite: replace the main verb impero or rogo with the equivalent form of iubeo and make any necessary changes:

- Pseudolus mihi ita imperavit, ut aliquem hominem strenuum benevolentem adducerem ad se (Plautus, *Pseudolus*).
- .....

- Allobrogibus imperavit ut iis frumenti copiam facerent (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- .....

- Fugitivos, quorum maior multitudo erat, ipsis imperavit ut interficerent (Livy, *Fragmenta*).
- .....

- Decem servis imperavit ut eum domum ducerent (Quintilianus, *Declamationes Minores*).
- .....

- Suis imperavit ne quod omnino telum in hostis reicerent (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- .....

- Rogavit ut se et causam suam tibi commendarem (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- .....

- Dives pauperem vicinum rogavit ut sibi arborem venderet (Seneca senior, *Controversiae*).
- .....

## b) Indirect prohibitions

1/ Put these direct prohibitions into indirect ones by introducing them with prohibeo ne + subjunctive:

- Noli hoc facere! .....

- Nolite ducem necare! .....

- Noli ei de hoc dicere! .....

- Nolite hanc urbem delere! .....

2/ Translate these sentences into Latin using the correct form of prohibeo ne + subjunctive:

- I forbid you to go to Rome.

.....

- Cicero forbade the senate to release the prisoners.

.....

- The law forbids me to help my friends.

.....

- The consul has forbidden me to speak to the senate.

.....

3/ Now translate them again but this time using veto + infinitive:

- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

4/ Replace the verb veto with the equivalent form of prohibeo ne + subjunctive:

- In senatu esse, locis commodisque publicis uti vetuit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

.....

- In conspectum suum venire vetuit (Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*).

.....

- Hoc fieri in provincia nulla lex vetat (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

.....

- Lex peregrinum vetat in murum ascendere (Cicero, *De Oratore*). ☀ There are laws that are really strange.

.....

- Is igitur versum in oratione vetat esse (Cicero, *De Oratore*). ☀ It seems that he preferred prose.

.....

5/ Now replace these constructions of prohibeo + infinitive with prohibeo ne + subjunctive:

- Lacrimae meorum me ad mortem ire prohibuerunt (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Quintum Fratrem*).  
.....

- Quis umquam consul senatum ipsius decretis parere prohibuit? (Cicero, *Pro Sestio*).  
.....

- Timor longius progreedi prohibuit (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).  
.....

## 4. Indirect question clauses

[143]

### a) Adverbial or pronominal questions

1/ Complete these statements:

- ▷ The verb in an indirect question must be in the ..... mood.
- ▷ In an indirect question, cur becomes ..... and quo modo becomes .....

2/ Put these direct questions into an indirect form by introducing them with Rogo ... :

- Quid facis?  
.....

- Quod est tibi nomen?  
.....

- Ubi habitas?  
.....

- Quo curris?  
.....

- Cur Graecia tibi placet?  
.....



- Quo modo hoc fecisti?
- .....

- Cui discipulae praemium rhetoricae dedisti?
- .....

- Unde veniunt nunc tui amici?
- .....

- In quo loco vidisti meum fratrem?
- .....

3/ Do the same, but now the direct questions are in the future tense:

- Quid facies cras?
- .....

- Cur cras Romam ibis?
- .....

- Cui libros dabis?
- .....

- Quem senatores novum imperatorem eligent?
- .....

- Quid in senatu de Catilina Cicero dicet?
- .....

4/ Now, again, put these direct questions into an indirect form, but this time introduce them with Rogabam... :

- Cui libros dabis?
- .....

- In quo loco vidisti meum fratrem?
- .....

- Quem senatores novum imperatorem eligent?
- .....

- Ubi habitat?
- .....

- Quid in senatu de Catilina Cicero dicet?
- .....

5/ Read these sentences which contain indirect questions:

- Quaeram, si prodierit, primum cur statim nihil egerit (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- Prima contio Pompeii qualis fuisset scripsi ad te antea (Cicero, *Ad Atticum*).
- Mulieri quid accidisset exponit (Petronius, *Satyricon*).
- Ostendit quae quisque de eo apud se dixerit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Memorare possum, quibus in locis maximas hostium copias populus Romanus parva manu fuderit (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- Interrogavit quid facere vellent (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

6/ Write what the direct question would have been:

❖ Example:    Interrogavit ubi Caesar esset.    ⇔    Original direct question: Ubi est Caesar?

- Interrogavit eum pater a quo vulneratus esset (Quintilianus, *Declamationes Minores*).
- .....

- Interrogavi quis te vulnerasset (Quintilianus, *Declamationes Minores*).
- .....

- Quis esset aut quid vellet quaesivit (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- .....

- Quaesivi quae causa fuisset (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- .....

- Quaesivit unde esset epistula (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- .....

- Quaesivit a Gallis quam ob rem domum suam venissent (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).
- .....

7/ Put the introductory verb of these sentences into the imperfect tense and make any other necessary changes to the indirect question:

- Incertum est quam longa cuiusque nostrum vita futura sit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- .....

- Quid enim ille facturus sit incertum est (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- .....

- Nescio quae causa odi fuerit (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- .....

- Nescio cur hoc mihi detimento esse debeat (Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*).
- .....

### b) Double questions

1/ Complete these statements:

▷ In a yes/no question, the English word WHETHER is translated with .....

- a/ si            b/ nonne            c/ num or -ne

▷ In a two-option question, WHETHER .... OR is translated with .....

- a/ si ... an      b/ num ... an      c/ utrum ... an

▷ The usual OR NOT annon, in an indirect question becomes .....

- a/ nonne      b/ necne      c/ annon (it remains as it is)

2/ Change these pairs of direct questions into indirect ones by introducing them with Rogo ... :

- Vis Romam ire? / Vis Romam an Tarentum ire?
- .....
- .....

- Caesarem ipsum vidisti in senatu? / Caesarem ipsum an eius fratrem vidisti in senatu?
- .....
- .....

- Iam hunc librum legisti? / Iam hunc librum legisti annon?
- .....  
.....

- Potuisti pecuniam regi dare? / Potuisti pecuniam regi dare annon?
- .....  
.....

- Multos homines vidisti in circo? / Multos homines vidisti in circo an paucos?
- .....  
.....

**3/ Read these sentences which contain indirect questions:**

- Interrogavit an haec vera essent (Quintilianus, *Declamationes Maiores*).
- Senatus a Bestia consultus est, placeretne legatos Iugurthae recipi moenibus (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Quaesivi misissetne (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Uxorem suam interrogavit essetne praegnas (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- Quaesivi a Catilina in nocturno conventu ad M. Laecam fuisse necne (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).
- Tum ostendi tabellas Lentulo et quae sibi cognosceretne signum (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).

**4/ Deduce what the direct question would have been:**

✧ Example: Interrogavit utrum Caesar esset Romae necne. ⇔ Original direct question: Est Caesar Romae annon?

- Tum ostendi tabellas Lentulo et quae sibi cognosceretne signum (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).  
.....
- Quaero enim potueritne Roscius ex societate suam partem petere necne (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Comoedo*).  
.....
- Qua re videte num dubitandum vobis sit omni studio ad id bellum incumbere (Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*).  
.....

- Quaeritur primum in ea quaestione quae est de natura deorum, sintne dei necne sint (Cicero, *De Natura Deorum*).
- 

- Di utrum sint necne sint quaeritur (Cicero, *De Natura Deorum*).
- 

- De quo putas ad me missum esse, sit missum necne nescio (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- 

**5/ Write the verb of the indirect question in the correct form for reflecting the English meaning:**

- Dubitabitur utrum [it is] ..... probabilius (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*).
- Vos nunc utrum illorum iudicium an voluntatem sequi [you prefer] ....., considerate (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Desinite dubitare utrum [it is] ..... utilius propter multos improbos uni parcere, an unius improbi supplicio multorum improbitatem coercere (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Quaerendum, credo, est Heius iste num aes alienum [he had] ..... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- De quo hoc primum quaero, [has turned up, use venio] ..... ea res in hoc iudicium necne (Cicero, *Pro Tullio*).
- Cum quaesissem num quid aliud de bonis eius [had gone, use pervenio] ..... ad Verrem, respondit ... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

## 5. Subordinate clauses in indirect speech

[144]

a/ Read these sentences:

- Aiebant enim fore testem senatorem qui se pontificiis comitiis pulsatum [esse] a Caelio diceret (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- Dicit montem quem a Labieno occupari voluerit ab hostibus teneri (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Dixit se istum publice laudare, quod sibi ita mandatum esset (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Civem Romanum qui omnibus in illo conventu notus, qui Syracusis natus esset, abs te securi percussum esse dixit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).



- Voce clara imperavit ut eum qui illum olearum ordinem intrasset occideret (Cicero, *In Verrem*).  
☞ Walking among trees has always been dangerous ...

- Quaero abs te circumsessusne sis Lampsaci, coeperitne domum *in qua deversabare illa multitudo incendere?*  
(Cicero, *In Verrem*) ⇝ People of Lampsacus were really fed up with Verres.
- Primum illud quaero quae causa Habito fuerit *cur interficere Oppianicum vellet* (Cicero, *Pro Cluentio*).
- Quaero quae lex lata sit *ut tu aedis meas consecrares* (Cicero, *De Domo Sua*).

▷ One of the subordinate clauses has its verb in the indicative. Which one and why?

.....  
.....

b/ Read these sentences and write them again in indirect speech introduced by Dico, making the necessary changes:

- Numquam iterum vidi magistrum qui me tanta docui.
- .....

- Discipulae legerunt libros quos magister in ludum intulit.
- .....

- Si quam celerrime venies, ibimus ad ludos videndos.
- .....

- Cuicunque pecuniam des, celeriter impendet.
- .....

- Oportet nos domum redire propterea quod cena iam parata est.
- .....

## 6. A special technique: *Oratio Obliqua*

### a) Introduction

[145]

Choose the correct answer to these questions:

▷ What is Oratio Obliqua?

**a/** The reproduction, in indirect style, of a string of statements.

**b/** The reproduction, in indirect style, of a speech.

**c/** The reproduction, in indirect style, of a combination of statements, questions and commands.

- ▷ What is the main characteristic of Oratio Obliqua?
- a/ All sentences are introduced by a verb of reported speech.
  - b/ Only statements are introduced by a verb of reported speech.
  - c/ Usually, only the first sentence is introduced by a verb of reported speech.

- ▷ Where do Reported Speech and Oratio Obliqua differ most?

- a/ In the reproduction of questions.
- b/ In the reproduction of statements.
- c/ In the reproduction of commands.

**b) What happens to statements?**

Change this short paragraph by Nepos (*Miltiades*) into Oratio Obliqua:

Nepos dicit: "Eisdem temporibus Persarum rex Darius ex Asia in Europam exercitu traecto Scythis bellum inferre decrevit. Pontem fecit in Histro flumine, qua copias traduceret. Eius pontis, dum ipse abisset, custodes reliquit principes, quos secum ex Ionia et Aeolide duxerat; quibus singulis illarum urbium perpetua dederat imperia. Sic enim facillime putavit se Graeca lingua loquentes, qui Asiam incolerent, sub sua retenturum potestate, si amicis suis oppida tuenda tradidisset, quibus se oppresso nulla spes salutis relinqueretur. In hoc fuit tum numero Miltiades, cui illa custodia crederetur."

  

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

**c) What happens to questions?****1/ Answer these questions:**

▷ What are the two constructions used to reproduce a question in *Oratio Obliqua*?

.....  
.....

▷ When does a direct question become an indirect question in the subjunctive? And in what person will the original question usually be?

.....  
.....

▷ When does a direct question become an *accusative + infinitive*? And in what person will the original question usually be?

.....  
.....

**2/ Change these direct questions into *Oratio Obliqua*:**

- Ubi es, Caesar? .....
- Cui hoc dare vis? .....
- Quem librum legis? .....
- Quem librum legisti? .....
- Quem librum leges? .....
- Cur odisti Catilinam, Cicero? .....
- Quot libros habes domi? .....

**3/ Now change these ones, supposing that an answer is expected:**

- Quis fecit hoc? .....
- Ubi est Cicero? .....
- Cur Romae non adest Caesar? .....

- Matrem Romae vidit? .....
- Quot equites habebat Arioistus? .....

4/ And now change these ones, supposing that no answer is expected:

- Quis vult hoc facere? .....
- Cur Petrus non vult senator fieri? .....
- Ubi librum celaverunt? .....
- Duce mortuo, quid faciemus? .....
- Quem eligere pontificem volunt cives? .....

#### d) What happens to commands?

Turn these commands into *Oratio Obliqua*:

- I! ↗ Shortest possible sentence in Latin, by the way. .....
- Da hoc tuo fratri! .....
- Noli necare senatorem! .....
- Dic omnia mihi! .....
- Iuva tuum patrem! .....
- Nolite hanc urbem delere! .....

#### e) What happens to pronouns and adverbs?

1/ Write the form of these pronouns and adverbs in *Oratio Obliqua*:

ego .....	nunc .....	heri .....
tu .....	hic (HERE) .....	cras .....
nos .....	hodie .....	

2/ Now change these sentences into *Oratio Obliqua* noting the use of pronouns and adverbs:

- Ego hoc numquam feci, fortasse tu fecisti.

.....

- Volumus urbem hodie videre.

- Nunc Romae sumus, sed cras ibimus Tarentum. Vis nobiscum ire?

- Heri sororem vidi in foro.

- Caesar hic adest, mecum.

### f) Collective usage

❖ We will use fragments from De Bello Gallico, where we can find a lot of *Oratio Obliqua* conveying the conversations between both Caesar and Ariovistus and their messengers, etc. Observe that in most cases the very beginning of the fragment has an introduction to reported speech (in the style of *Dixit...*), before the real *Oratio Obliqua* begins.

1/ Rewrite these paragraphs trying to reproduce Ariovistus' direct speech:

a/ Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit, de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis; non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendum capere iure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sese Gallis sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse: omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superatas esse.

b/ Ei legationi Arioistus respondit: si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno commeatu atque molimento in unum locum contrahere posse.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

2/ Now reproduce the messengers' direct speech:

Legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti; non se existimare Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere possent; se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset Atuatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

3/ And now reproduce Caesar's direct speech:

Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit; sed exitus fuit orationis: sibi nullam cum iis amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent; neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint alienos occupare; neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine iniuria possint; sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se et de Sueborum iniuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant: hoc se Ubiis imperaturus.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

4/ Here are some questions in *Oratio Obliqua* together with some statements. Revert the sentences into direct style paying special attention to the questions:

a/ Quid sibi vellet? Cur in suas possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram.

.....  
.....

b/ Responderunt: populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire; si se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

c/ Ariovistum se consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam adpetisse; cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum iudicaret?

.....  
.....  
.....

d/ Quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id iis eripi quis pati posset?

.....

## f) Uses of the gerund and gerundive

### 1. Definition and forms

[146]

#### a) Gerund

1/ Choose the correct answer:

▷ The gerund...

- |                              |                            |                           |                                   |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>a/</b> is a noun.         | <b>b/</b> is an adjective. | <b>c/</b> is a pronoun.   | <b>d/</b> is an adverb.           |
| <b>a/</b> has six cases.     | <b>b/</b> has five cases.  | <b>c/</b> has four cases. | <b>d/</b> does not have any case. |
| <b>a/</b> is masculine.      | <b>b/</b> is feminine.     | <b>c/</b> is neuter.      | <b>d/</b> has no gender.          |
| <b>a/</b> has only singular. | <b>b/</b> has only plural. | <b>c/</b> has both.       | <b>d/</b> has neither.            |

▷ The gerund can be considered as the declension of...

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>a/</b> the present passive infinitive. | <b>b/</b> the past passive infinitive. |
| <b>c/</b> the present active infinitive.  | <b>d/</b> any infinitive.              |

2/ Mark the forms that cannot be part of a gerund:

- |                      |                      |                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| <b>a/</b> laborandis | <b>b/</b> laborando  | <b>c/</b> laboratum  | <b>d/</b> laborandum |
| <b>e/</b> laborandi  | <b>f/</b> laborandus | <b>g/</b> laborandae |                      |

3/ Write the gerund of the verbs ludo, -ere and facio, -ere:

.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

**b) Gerundive****1/ Choose the correct answer:**

▷ The gerundive...

- |                              |                             |                           |                                  |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>a/</b> is a noun.         | <b>b/</b> is an adjective.  | <b>c/</b> is a pronoun.   | <b>d/</b> is an adverb.          |
| <b>a/</b> is only masculine. | <b>b/</b> is only feminine. | <b>c/</b> is only neuter. | <b>d/</b> has the three genders. |
| <b>a/</b> has only singular. | <b>b/</b> has only plural.  | <b>c/</b> has both.       | <b>d/</b> has neither.           |

▷ The gerundive is in fact...

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <b>a/</b> the present passive participle. | <b>b/</b> the past active participle. |
| <b>c/</b> the future passive participle.  | <b>d/</b> none of these.              |

**2/ Mark the forms that can be only a gerundive:**

- |                    |                    |                      |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| <b>a/</b> dicendos | <b>b/</b> dicendi  | <b>c/</b> dicendorum | <b>d/</b> dicendum |
| <b>e/</b> dicendis | <b>f/</b> dicendum | <b>g/</b> dicendo    |                    |

**3/ Write the gerundive of the verbs pugno, -are and audio, -ire:**

.....

.....

.....

**2. Uses of the gerund**

[147]

**a) Accusative**

Fill in the gap with the gerund of the given verb in the accusative:

- Milites ad ..... venerunt. [pugno]
- Constituerunt ea quae ad ..... pertinerent comparare (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [proficiscor]
- Legatis respondit diem se ad ..... sumpturum [esse] (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [delibero]

- Reliquas [naves] paratas ad ..... atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [navigo]
- Scipio ad ..... paratus equitatus magnam partem ad ..... iter Domiti et ..... praemisit (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*). [sequor] [exploro] [cognosco]

**b) Genitive**

fill in the gap with the gerund of the given verb in the genitive:

- Heri legi librum de arte ..... [doceo]
- Caesar ..... finem facit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [loquor]
- Huic homini summam copiam facultatemque ..... natura largita est (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*). [dico]
- Per multa male ..... causa ..... que fecerunt (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*). [ago] [fraudo]
- Ne ..... quidem de morte patris potestas permittitur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [quaero]

**c) Dative**

fill in the gap with the gerund of the given verb in the dative:

- Hic liber idoneus est ..... [disco]
- Oportet te operam dare ..... [audio]
- Magnam operam dederunt ..... [vinco]

**d) Ablative**

fill in the gap with the gerund of the given verb in the ablative:

- ..... multa disces. [lego]
- Eos multa ..... ac ..... casum suum confirmat (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*). [polliceor] [misereor]
- Multos mortalis et urbis aliquot ..... cepit (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*). [pugno]
- A me postulat ne ..... tempus absumam (Cicero, *Pro Quintio*). [dico]
- Dissimulamus, Hortensi, quod saepe experti in ..... sumus (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [dico]

### e) Mixed uses of the gerund

1/ For each pair of sentences (• \*), read the first, noting the case of the gerund, and fill in the gap of the second with the gerund of the given verb in that same case:

- Nox tibi finem dicendi fecit (Cicero, *Pro Tullio*).

\* Nunc vero iam adempta est non modo ..... verum etiam ..... facultas (Cicero, *In Verrem*).  
[resisto] [suppedito]

- Haec multitudo, quae ad audiendum convenit, ... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

\* Mihi autem ad ..... satis est ... (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*). [vincere]

- Nam eum qui palam est adversarius facile cavendo vitare possis (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

\* Quid est quod ego ..... aut ..... efficere aut adsequi debeam? (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [dico] [cogito]

2/ Now you must decide in which case the gerund must be written so that the sentence makes sense:

- In Siciliam sum ..... causa profectus (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [inquiero]

• Quid mihi ad ..... dedisti, bone accusator? Quid hisce autem ad .....?  
(Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [defendo] [suspicio]

• Posteaquam iste omnia abstulit, alia ..... , alia ..... , alia ..... ferebat Sthenius ut poterat  
(Cicero, *In Verrem*). [rogo] [posco] [sumo]

• Pervestigabant ut, ubi quidque esset, aliqua ratione invenirent. Aliud ..... , aliud ..... , ... inveniebant  
(Cicero, *In Verrem*). [minor] [pollicor]

- Ad ..... impedimento est aetas (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [dico]

3/ Translate these sentences into Latin by using the gerund:

- I am desirous of running.

.....

- You will learn a lot by reading.

.....

- I have come to teach, and you have come to learn.

.....

- This place is ideal for sleeping.
- .....

- They put in a lot of effort in fighting.
- .....

- I did this for the sake of winning.
- .....

### 3. Gerundive replacing the gerund

[148]

#### a) Basic concept

##### 1/ When do we usually replace the gerund construction with a gerundive one?

- a/ When the gerund would have a genitive depending on it.
- b/ When the gerund would have an indirect object.
- c/ When the gerund would have a direct object.
- d/ When the gerund would have no objects at all.

##### 2/ Change these sentences from the gerund construction to the gerundive one:

Gerund: Librum scripsi de vincendo hostes.

*Gerundive:* .....

Gerund: Romam veni milites videndi causa.

*Gerundive:* .....

Gerund: Librum scripsi de oppugnando urbes.

*Gerundive:* .....

Gerund: Romam veni pecuniam tibi dandi causa.

*Gerundive:* .....

### b) Use of the gerundive

1/ For each pair of sentences (• \*), read the first, noting the case of the gerundive, and fill in the gap of the second sentence with the gerundive of the given verb in that same case:

- Ibi Sex. Tarquinium mala libido Lucretiae per vim stuprandae capit (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- \* Maiores vostri, ..... iuris et maiestatis ..... gratia, bis per secessionem armati Aventinum occupavere (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*). [paro] [constituo]
- Causam de pecuniis repetundis Catilina dixit (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).
- \* Cupiditates porro quae possunt esse in eo qui ... ruri semper habitarit et in agro ..... vixerit? (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*). [colo]
- Toti ... Brutum iam inde ad expugnandum regnum vocantem sequuntur ducem (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- \* Calpurnius Romam ad magistratus ..... proficiscitur (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*). [rogō]

2/ Read each sentence and say whether the -nd- form is a gerund or a gerundive:

- Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites decucurrit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
.....
  - Nuntiatum est ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
.....
  - Vim in inquirendo tantam habui quantam mihi lex dabat (Cicero, *In Verrem*).  
.....
  - Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).  
.....
- ◇
- Studium ad pugnandum virtusque deerat (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).  
.....
  - Ipsi incensi sunt studio quod ad agrum colendum attinet (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).  
.....

- Non mehercule augendi criminis causa, iudices, dicam (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

.....

- Alia visendi causa nulla est (Cicero, *In Verrem*). ☞ *It seems there was not much to see.*

.....

**3/ Translate these sentences into Latin by using the gerundive (please observe that some of them are from the previous gerund exercise but with a direct object instead):**

- I am desirous of defeating the enemy.

.....

- You will learn a lot by reading books.

.....

- I have come to teach literature, and you have come to learn a language.

.....

- This place is ideal for writing a letter.

.....

- They put in a lot of effort in besieging the city.

.....

- I did this for the sake of earning money.

.....

## 4. Exceptions to the replacement

[149]

### a) Neuter adjectives or pronouns

Revert these sentences to the gerund construction and, in order to avoid confusion, suppose that the gerundives refer to neuter plural objects:

- Veni omnium videndorum causa.

.....

- Caesar cupidus erat omnium capiendorum.

.....

- De omnibus visitandis locuti sumus.
- .....

**b) Cacophonic reasons**

Revert these sentences to the gerund construction in order to avoid the cacophonic effect of a repeated -orum or -arum:

- Heri locuti sumus de arte discipulorum docendorum.
- .....

- Templorum multorum aedificandorum causa multos servos secum tulit.
- .....

- Bonus dominus est semper cupidus servorum iuvandorum.
- .....

## g) The periphrastic conjugation and the supine

### 1. The active periphrastic

[150]

a/ All of these sentences have a future active participle in them, but which ones do not feature the active periphrastic and why?

- Heri vidi milites contra Caesarem pugnaturos. ....
- Hi milites contra Caesarem pugnaturi sunt. ....
- Milites contra Caesarem pugnaturi acerrimi sunt. ....
- Has litteras meis amicis cras Romam ituris nunc misi. ....
- Mei amici cras Romam ituri sunt. ....
- Mei amici Romam ituri nunc hic sunt. ....

b/ Read each sentence and say from which verb the future participle comes:

- Disputatio de officio futura est (Cicero, *De Officiis*).

It comes from .....

- Paula Valeria rupta est D. Bruto (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

It comes from .....

- Ea profutura est rei publicae (Cicero, *Epistula ad Octavianum*).

It comes from .....

- Illi ipsi qui remanserant, vix decuma pars aratorum, relicturi agros omnes erant (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

It comes from .....

- In consilium erant ituri iudices XXXII (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).

It comes from .....

- Hos omnes deos publicos privatosque, Quirites, deserturi estis? (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

It comes from .....

c) Complete each sentence with the correct future participle of the given verb:

- Cum hoc equite, cum hoc pedite ..... estis (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [pugno]
- Neque enim alio loco de Sullae rebus ..... sumus (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*). [dico]
- Illi oppugnatum ..... erant? Quem? Fabium. Quo consilio? Ut occiderent (Cicero, *Pro Tullio*). [venio]
- Tectis ac parietibus iura ..... estis? (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [dico]
- Quid si hostes ad urbem veniant ..... estis? (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [facio]
- Similes consules sumus .....? (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*). [habeo]

d) Repeat the process, but writing the participle in the accusative case:

- Numquam existimavi spem ullam esse ..... Milonis inimicos (Cicero, *Pro Milone*). [habeo]
- Ex eo loco ipsi iam sentiunt se numquam ..... esse (Cicero, *Philippicae*). [exeo]
- Spero nos ad haec ipsa via ..... esse (Cicero, *De Republica*). [pervenio]
- Medici, quamquam intellegunt saepe, tamen numquam aegris dicunt illo morbo eos esse ..... (Cicero, *De Divinatione*). [morior]

e) Translate these sentences using the active periphrastic:

- I am about to send you a letter.

.....

- Caesar was about to speak with Pompeius.

.....

- Claudia is about to go to the senate.

.....

- I think that he has the purpose of seeing me.

.....

- She has the purpose of proposing a new law.

.....

- They say that this girl is about to teach him literature.

.....

## 2. The passive periphrastic

[151]

a/ All of these sentences have a future passive participle in them, but which ones do not feature the passive periphrastic and why?

- Video pontem militibus delendum. ....
- Pons militibus delendus est. ....
- Pons militibus delendus est magnus. ....
- Tibi do librum legendum. ....
- Hic civis senatui laudandus est. ....
- Civis senatui laudandus domi est. ....

b/ Read each sentence and write from what verb the future participle comes:

- Per corpus legati eundum erat (*Tacitus, Annales*).

It comes from .....

- Ceteris non modo nihil ignoscendum est sed etiam acriter est resistendum (*Cicero, Pro Caelio*).

It comes from .....

- Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum erat; ... signum tuba dandum erat; ab opere revocandi milites erant; ... acies instruenda erat; milites cohortandi erant (*Caesar, De Bello Gallico*).

It comes from .....

c/ Complete each sentence with the correct future participle:

- Mihi Arpinum ..... est (*Cicero, Epistulae ad Familiares*). [eo]
- Quid ..... est? Qui deus ..... est? Cuius hominis fides ..... est?  
(*Cicero, Pro Quinctio*). [ago] [appello] [imploro]
- Hoc quidem in hac aetate minime ..... est (*Cicero, Pro Caelio*). [reprendo]
- ..... , ..... , ..... sunt omnia, causa non solum ..... , sed etiam graviter copioseque ..... est (*Cicero, Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*). [dico] [demonstro] [explico] [expono] [ago]
- Siciliae civitates multae sunt, iudices, ornatae atque honestae, ex quibus in primis ..... est civitas Halaesina (*Cicero, In Verrem*). [numero]

d/ Repeat the process but with the participle in the accusative case:

- Quem ergo ad finem putas ..... illam aetatem fuisse? (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*). [custodio]
- Caesar non ..... esse sibi statuit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [exspecto]
- Rei frumentariae ..... esse existimavit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [prospicio]

e/ Translate these sentences using the passive periphrastic:

- Now I must go home.
- .....

- Citizens must praise that author.
- .....

- Students must read this book.
- .....

- I think that Claudia must write this letter.
- .....

- They think that Caesar must receive this senator.
- .....

- One should go to Rome.
- .....

### 3. The supine

[152]

a/ Complete these sentences by adding the supine in -um of the given verb:

- Non mea culpa saepe ad vos ..... mitto, patres conscripti (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*). [oro]
- Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt ..... auxilium (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [rogo]
- Deinde, ut ..... discessimus, me et de via fessum, et qui ad multam noctem vigilassem, artior quam solebat somnus complexus est (Cicero, *De Republica*). [cubo]

b/ Complete these sentences by adding the supine in -u of the given verb:

- Hoc facile ..... fuit (Cicero, *Pro Tullio*). [facio]
- Sed plebes incredibile ..... est quam intenta fuerit (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*). [memoro]

- Incredibile ..... est, iudices (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [dico]
- Ego, si hoc optimum ..... iudicare, patres conscripti, Catilinam morte multari, unius usuram horae gladiatori isti ad vivendum non dedissem (Cicero, *In Catilinam*). [facio]
- O rem cum ..... crudelem tum ..... nefariam! (Cicero, *Pro Plancio*). [audio] [video]

c/ Decide whether the missing element is the supine in -um or in -u of the given verb and write it:

- Omnia praeteribo quae mihi turpia ..... videbuntur (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [dico]
- Illud vero taeterimum est non modo ..... sed etiam ..... (Cicero, *Philippicae*). [aspicio] [audio]
- Perfacile ..... esse illis probat conata efficere (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [facio]
- ..... longius progressi erant (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*). [pabulor]
- Forsitan hoc quod dicturus sum mirabile ..... esse videatur (Cicero, *In Pisonem*). [audio]
- Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae legati principes civitatum ad Caesarem ..... convenerunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*). [gratulor]
- Postridie homines mane in contionem conveniunt; quaerunt quid optimum ..... sit (Cicero, *In Verrem*). [facio]

d/ Translate these sentences using a supine:

- In the end, that was very easy to say but very difficult to do.
- .....

- I have come here to teach.
- .....

- I went home to have dinner.
- .....

- It's wonderful to hear this!
- .....

- That's the best thing we can do now.
- .....

- After the battle, everybody came to congratulate the general.
- .....

## h) Combination of negatives

### 1. Tendencies in the use of negatives

[153]

a/ Rewrite these sentences applying the Latin style of putting the sense of negativity as early as possible in the sentence:

- In castra perveni sed iam omnia profecti sunt atque nullus miles aderat.
- .....

- In castra perveni atque nullum militem vidi.
- .....

- Hoc non feci atque numquam faciam!
- .....

- Hoc difficillimum est atque nullo modo poteris perficere.
- .....

- Ille locus periculosus est atque nemo ire vult.
- .....

- Bellum odi atque neminem necabo.
- .....

- Petrus thesaurum celavit atque nusquam eum invenient.
- .....

b/ Read these examples:

- Unde eos noverat Roscius qui Romam multis annis non venit neque umquam plus triduo fuit?  
(Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- ..., neque ullus flare ventus poterat quin aliqua ex parte secundum cursum haberent (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Inter se conloquia milites habebant, neque ullum interim telum per pactiones loquentium traiciebatur  
(Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).

c/ Complete the sentences with the given words to produce a good overall sense:

*ulla* (2), *ullam*, *umquam* (2), *ullum*

- Memini enim, memini neque ..... *obliviscar noctis illius* (Cicero, *Pro Plancio*).
- — Loquere, audio. — Neque ..... *verbum faciat perplexabile, neque* ..... *lingua sciat loqui nisi Attica* (Plautus, *Asinaria*).
- ... neque ..... *artem desiderant* (Cicero, *De Oratore*).
- ... neque ..... *omnino a senatu mandata accepimus* (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Leontinus Gorgias centum et septem complevit annos neque ..... *in suo studio atque opere cessavit* (Cicero, *Cato Maior de Senectute*).

## 2. Negatives cancelling or reinforcing each other?

[154]

a/ Translate these expressions, using *non* combined with one of these negatives for the second part:

*numquam, nemo, nusquam, nullus*

- |           |   |           |       |   |                  |
|-----------|---|-----------|-------|---|------------------|
| always    | / | sometimes | ..... | / | <i>non</i> ..... |
| everybody | / | somebody  | ..... | / | <i>non</i> ..... |
| nowhere   | / | somewhere | ..... | / | <i>non</i> ..... |
| no book   | / | some book | ..... | / | <i>non</i> ..... |

b/ Choose the right translation for each sentence:

- Neminem non vidi.  
 a/ I did not see anyone. b/ I saw everybody. c/ I saw somebody.
- Non neminem vidi.  
 a/ I did not see anyone. b/ I saw everybody. c/ I saw somebody.
- Non feci hoc numquam.  
 a/ I have never done this. b/ I have always done this. c/ I have sometimes done this.
- Numquam hoc non feci.  
 a/ I have never done this. b/ I have always done this. c/ I have sometimes done this.

- Nusquam non invenies pecuniam.
  - a/ You will not find money anywhere. b/ You will find money somewhere. c/ You will find money everywhere.
- Non nusquam invenies pecuniam.
  - a/ You will not find money anywhere. b/ You will find money somewhere. c/ You will find money everywhere.

c/ Read these sentences, in which non is the second negative:

- Ut Antonius rediit in Italiam, nemo non magno in periculo Atticum putaverat propter intimam familiaritatem Ciceronis et Bruti (*Nepos, Vitae*).
- Nemo non aliquid voluit novi dicere (*Annaeus Seneca senior, Controversiae*).
- Nemo non benignus est sui iudex (*Annaeus Seneca iunior, De Beneficiis*).
- Illud neminem non iuvabit (*Quintilianus, Institutio Oratoria*).
- Non mentiar, si dixero neminem non amare beneficia sua (*Seneca iunior, De Beneficiis*).
- Nihil non acerbum prius quam maturum fuit (*Publilius Syrus, Sententiae*).

d/ Read these sentences, in which non is the first negative:

- Erant autem convivia cum maximo clamore atque convicio; non numquam etiam res ad pugnam atque ad manus vocabatur (*Cicero, In Verrem*). ↗ It seems that Verres' banquets were really noisy.
- Fuisti non numquam in isdem hortis (*Cicero, Pro Caelio*).
- Si proficiscor, ut constitueram, legatus in Graeciam, caedis impendentis periculum non nihil vitare videor (*Cicero, Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- Cum esset non nemo in senatu qui diceret ... (*Cicero, Pro Lege Manilia*).
- Nam quod fortasse non nemo vestrum audierit, ... (*Cicero, In Verrem*).
- In ipsa, inquam, curia non nemo hostis est (*Cicero, Pro Murena*).

e/ Read these sentences; some of them have non as the first negative and some have it as the second:

- Male facere qui vult, nunquam non causam invenit (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae*).  
• Alteras [naves] feci maiores et meliores et feliciores, ut nemo non me virum fortem diceret (Petronius, *Satyricon*). *¶ He had lost all of his ships in a storm.*
- Non nihil egisti hoc loco; nam mihi eripuisti ornamentum orationis meae (Cicero, *Pro Plancio*).
- Puto autem mea non nihil interesse (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- Nihil non summi ducis consilio gessisse Hirtium video (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).  
*¶ It seems he was a good general.*
- Non semper viator a latrone, non numquam etiam latro a viatore occiditur (Cicero, *Pro Milone*).
- ... iisdemque studiis ita fruemur ut numquam non una esse videamur (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

**ALIA****a) Peculiarities and idioms**

1. (unapplied in this book)
2. Non-verbal expressions
3. Verbal expressions

**b) Words that are easily confused**

1. Non-verbal forms
2. Verbal forms

## a) Peculiarities and idioms

### 1. (unapplied in this book)

### 2. Non-verbal expressions

[155]

#### a) Nouns involved

##### 1/ Match the following expressions to their meanings:

AFTERWARDS / IN PEACE AND WAR / MEANWHILE / UP TO NOW / DEATH PENALTY / IN FACT / AT THE APPOINTED TIME / DAY AFTER DAY / FROM WHICH COUNTRY? / UP TO THEN / THE EXPLOITS / THE WHOLE OF THE SENATE / AT THAT TIME

interea loci	.....	re vera	.....
post id locorum	.....	domi militaeque	.....
capitis poena	.....	unde domo?	.....
res gestae	.....	ad id locorum	.....
senatus frequens	.....	id temporis	.....
diem de die	.....	ad tempus	.....
ad hoc tempus	.....		

##### 2/ Read these examples, noting the expressions in italics:

- Rogasne, improbe, etiam, qui *ludos facis* me? (Plautus, *Amphitruo*).
- In illo [iudicio], nisi ita *res manifesta* erit adlata ut responderi nihil possit, vicimus (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Hunc Antonium Gellius et Lentulus ... *senatu moverunt* titulosque subscriperunt (Asconius Pedianus, *In Toga Candida*).
- Quod parato *opus est*, para (Terentius Afer, *Andria*).
- Una voce *senatus frequens* retinendum me [esse] in urbe censuit (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- Frumentum omne ad se referri iubet, *capitis poenam* iis qui non paruerint constituit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

**3/ Now read these and find the idioms:**

- Domi militiaeque res publica venalis fuit (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Res familiaris mea lege Caesaris deminuta est (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- Ille egregius adulescens inmoderatae fortitudinis morte poenas dedit (Sallust, *Catilinae Coniuratio*).
- Sunt ad rem militarem apti (Cicero, *De Officiis*).
- Iube istos omnes ad nomen citari et unde domo quisque sit quaere (Seneca iunior, *Dialogi*).
- Ingens quidem et luctus et pavor civitatem cepit; sed tamen quia consules, ubi summa rerum esset, ad id locorum prospere rem gererent, minus his cladibus commovebantur (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

**4/ Replace the English expressions with the Latin translation from the list:**

*Iudos facit / re vera / rem publicam / diem de die / post ea loci / poenas dederunt / opus est*

- Interim Capitolinus exercitus, [day after day] ..... prospectans ecquod auxilium ab dictatore appareret, postremo ... (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- Itaque ipsi, ne dicam mihi, rei publicae [were punished] ..... (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Nunc iste te [mocked] ..... (Plautus, *Captivi*).
- [The state] ..... atque hoc imperium et populi Romani nomen auxerunt (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- Ita dictu [it is necessary] ..... (Terentius Afer, *Heauton Timorumenos*).
- [Afterwards] ..... consul haud dubie iam victor pervenit in oppidum Cirtam (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).
- Etenim [in fact] ..... multo magis est petendum ab hominibus, si salvi et honesti esse volumus (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

*interea loci / tempore capto / ab re / ad tempus / res gestas / opus est / senatus datus est*

- Itaque [at the appointed time] ..... ad Pisonem omnes venimus (Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*).
- Legati Romam venerunt. Iis extra urbem in aede Apollinis [permission to speak to the senate was given] ..... (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- Dum ego propter te errans patria careo demens, tu [meanwhile] ..... conlocupletasti te, Antiphila, et me in his deseruisti malis (Terentius Afer, *Heauton Timorumenos*).

- Thucyrides autem [the exploits] ..... et bella narrat et proelia (Cicero, *Orator*).
- Nihil [it is necessary] ..... exemplis hoc facere longius (Cicero, *De Finibus*).
- Quid et Plutarchus noster, vir doctissimus ac prudentissimus, senserit, non [despicable] ..... est, ut id quoque audias (Aulus Gellius, *Noctes Atticae*).
- Tandem [taking advantage of the opportunity] ..... sic voce precatur: "summe deum, ..." (Vergilius, *Aeneis*).

*senatus datus est / ex quo tempore / rerum potita est / id temporis / post id locorum / veras poenas dare / ad hoc tempus*

- Persei deinde regis legatis post paucos dies [permission to speak to the senate was given] ..... (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- Vis illum [to be really punished] .....? (Seneca senior, *Controversiae*).
- [From the time in which] ..... concordia de civitate sublata est, libertas sublata est (Cicero, *Rhetorica ad Herennium*).
- Quae gens [up to now] ..... his sedibus sese continet (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Aelius Melissus in nostra memoria fuit Romae summi loci inter grammaticos [at that time] ..... (Aulus Gellius, *Noctes Atticae*).
- Prudentissima civitas Atheniensium, dum ea [seized power] ..... , fuisse traditur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- [Afterwards] ..... quando ad villam veneris, dabitur tibi amphora una (Plautus, *Casina*).

## b) Adjectives or participles involved

### 1/ Match the following expressions to their meanings:

TO SPEAK PROUDLY / AT THE BEGINNING OF THE WINTER / SILLY / TO INFORM / AFTER VICTORY HAD BEEN ACHIEVED / SINCE THE BIRTH OF MAN / TO BUY AT A HIGH PRICE / TO VALUE A LOT / ALOUD / I HAVE DECIDED / AT THE BEGINNING OF THE DAY

mente captus	.....	magni aestimare	.....
coepita hieme	.....	certiore facere	.....
magna voce	.....	mihi certum est	.....
post homines natos	.....	coepita luce	.....
magna loqui	.....	magno emere	.....
re bene gesta	.....		

**2/ Read these examples, paying attention to the expressions in italics:**

- ... ea quae sunt quasi *pugnantia* inter se (Cicero, *De Partitione Oratoria*).
- *Ita re male gesta* Cn. Pompeius filius naves inde avertit (anon., *Bellum Africum*).
- *Magna loquor* (Tibullus, *Elegiae*).
- *Intellego tuam gratiam magni aestimari* (Cicero, *Pro Murena*).
- *De ceteris consulem certiores fecit* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

**3/ Replace the English expressions with the Latin from the list:**

*certiores facti sunt / res gestae / magna voce / in colle medio / mente captus / post homines natos*

- *Ipse interim* [half way up the hill] ..... *triplicem aciem instruxit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- ... *totumque corpus percurrit frigidus pavor, neque aliter, quam si vana obiceretur oculis imago,* [out of my mind] ..... *steti* (Quintilianus, *Declamationes Maiores*).
- *Ubi de eius adventu Helvetii* [were informed] ..... , ... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *In hac trepidatione Decius consul M. Valerium* [aloud] ..... *inclamat* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- *Duo haec capita nata sunt* [since mankind exists] ..... *taeterrima et spurcissima, Dolabella et Antonius* (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- *Tuae* [exploits] ..... *ita notae sunt ut trans montem Taurum etiam de Matrinio sit auditum* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

*laborantes / certiores fecit / re bene gesta / copta luce / mihi certum est / talia dicta dedit*

- *Igitur* [at the beginning of the day] ..... *Milichus in hortos Servilianos pergit* (Tacitus, *Annales*).
- *Nunc* [I have decided] ..... *alio pacto Pseudolo insidias dare* (Plautus, *Pseudolus*).
- *Ille manus tendens* [pronounced these words] ..... : "si mihi ..." (Ovidius, *Fasti*).
- *Quos* [in difficulties] ..... *conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- *Ubi hic est homo? Abiit neque me* [informed] ..... (Plautus, *Aulularia*).
- *Ita* [after the victory had been achieved] ..... *se recipiunt in castra* (Hirtius, *De Bello Gallico Liber VIII*).

### c) Cases of unexpected agreement

Read the sentences and answer the questions:

- Pecunia bonum est, propterea quod ea maxime vitam beatam efficiat (Cicero, *De Inventione*).

▷ What would be the difference, if we had found Pecunia bona est?

.....

- Haec causa fuit cur decerneretis ... (Cicero, *Philippicae*).

- Haec quae videtur esse accusatio mea non potius accusatio quam defensio est existimanda (Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*).

▷ In both sentences, why has Cicero written haec and not hoc (hoc quod, in the second sentence)?

.....

### d) The personal construction of the infinitive

1/ Read these examples:

- Ii qui a me dimissi sunt, discessisse dicuntur, ut mihi rursus bellum inferrent (Caesar, *Epistulae ad Ciceronem*).

- Eo ipso die Syracusae a Marcello captiae esse dicuntur (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

- Permulti et ex urbe et ex agris se in illa castra conferre dicuntur (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).

- Siciliam provinciam C. Verres per triennium depopulatus esse, Siculorum civitates vastasse, domos exinanisse, fana spoliasse dicitur (Cicero, *In Q. Caecilio*).

- Ille eam Siciliae partem tenuisse dicitur (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

- Quid? Illa, Caecili, contemnendane tibi videntur esse? (Cicero, *Divinatio in Q. Caecilium*).

2/ Change these sentences into the impersonal construction:

- Isti mihi Verrem defendere videntur (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- .....

- Ei quibus natura sensum dedit mihi laetari videntur (Cicero, *De Lege Agraria*).
- .....

- Ille lanista omnino iam a gladio recessisse videtur (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- .....

- Mihi videris, Eruci, una mercede duas res adsequi velle (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- 

- Ipsam victoriam vicesse videris (Cicero, *Pro Marcello*).
- 

- Laudavisse mihi videris nostram rem publicam (Cicero, *De Republica*).
- 

**3/ Change these sentences into the personal construction:**

- Dicitur eo tempore matrem Pausaniae vixisse (Nepos, *Vitae*).
- 

- Dicitur tuum filium consulem factum esse.
- 

- Dicitur sororem Marci heri cum Caesare locutam esse.
- 

- Dicitur Catilinam Roma ad Manlium fugisse.
- 

**e) The uses of et**

**1/ Read these examples and note the uses of et:**

- M. Iunius, homo et in aliis causis exercitatus et in hac multum ac saepe versatus, hoc tempore abest (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- C. Quinctius fuit P. Quincti huius frater, pater familias et prudens et attentus (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Et ab illo qui tum dixit iam informata causa est et a me (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

**2/ Translate into Latin using et:**

- This consul is both clever and cruel.
-

- I gave a prize to both the best boys and the best girls.
- .....

- This law has been praised both by the senators and by the citizens.
- .....

### f) **Quod si**

1/ Read these sentences:

- Quod si bona P. Quinti possideres, possidere omnia eo iure deberes (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).
- Quod si Romae Cn. Pompeius privatus esset hoc tempore, tamen ad tantum bellum is erat deligendus atque mittendus (Cicero, *Pro Lege Manilia*).
- Quod si Catilina in urbe ad hanc diem remansisset, dimicandum nobis cum illo fuisset (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).

2/ Translate into Latin:

- But if Caesar had been there, the enemy would have fled.
- .....

### g) **Futurum esse / fore ut**

1/ Read these sentences:

- Magna me spes tenet fore ut omnes expurgiscantur ad libertatem (Sallust, *Ad Caesarem de Re Publica*).
- An non putamus fore ut eos paeniteat? (Cicero, *Philippicae*).
- Spero fore ut contingat id nobis (Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes*).
- Tu fac animo forti magnoque sis speresque fore ut tuam pristinam dignitatem et gloriam consequare (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- Huius me constantiae puto fore ut numquam paeniteat (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

2/ The expression **fore ut** has been removed from these sentences. Try to find out where it was so that the sentences make sense and then rewrite them:

- Magnam spem habere coepi te brevi tempore incolumem haberemus (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- .....

- Puto, cum legeris, mirere nos id locutos esse inter nos quod numquam locuti sumus (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- 

- Spero perspiciam, quod tamen iam pridem perspicio, me a te amari (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).
- 

- Ea comitia puto ducantur (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- 

- Quibus recitatis puto aliquando commoveatur senatus (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- 

### 3/ Translate into Latin using fore ut:

- I think that you will finish this task soon.
- 

- I hope that she reads this book.
- 

- They hoped that the senators would expel Catiline from Rome.
- 

## 3. Verbal expressions

[156]

### a/ Match the following expressions to their meanings:

PRICES ARE LOW / TO SET SAIL / TO BE PUNISHED / TO GET MARRIED / TO BE PERSUASIONED / TO MAKE CRY / TO GET WORSE / TO GIVE FREEDOM / TO PUT A COMPLETE END TO THE WAR

bellum delere .....

uxorem ducere .....

manu mittere .....

vela dare .....

lacrimas movere .....

persuasum habere .....

in peius mutare .....

pretia iacent .....

poenas dare .....

TO HAVE INFLUENCE / TO SET IN MOTION / TO KILL SOMEONE / TO PROPOSE A LAW / TO BE AN ASSET / TO SINK / TO GO OUT TO DEEP SEA / TO WITHDRAW / TO PUT IN DANGER

ima petere	.....	fructui esse	.....
altum petere	.....	signa tollere	.....
se recipere	.....	aliquem tollere	.....
legem rogare	.....	in discrimen vocare	.....
valere	.....		

TO SPEND THE NIGHT / TO FEEL WELL / A "YES" VOTE / TO SUPPORT SOMEONE / TO BEHAVE WELL / TO SURPASS THE LIMIT / AT FIVE YEARS OLD / TO MOCK

se gerere bene	.....	quinque annos egressus	.....
ludibrio habere	.....	noctem exigere	.....
bene se habere	.....	cum aliquo facere	.....
modum egredi	.....	uti rogas	.....

I GIVE NO IMPORTANCE / TO ARRIVE IN HARBOUR / TO DIE / TO HAVE A BAD REPUTATION / TO MAKE USE OF THE OPPORTUNITY / PLEASE! / AT FULL GALLOP / TO BE IMMORTAL / TO HIDE YOUR ANGER / TO DEFEND A JUDICIAL CASE

equo admisso	.....	male audire	.....
flocci facio	.....	portum capere	.....
animam agere	.....	tempus capere	.....
causam agere	.....	morte carere	.....
amabo te	.....	iram condere	.....

b/ Read these sentences and note the expressions in italics:

- Nescio an ullum iucundius *tempus exegerim*, quam quo nuper apud Spurinnam fui (Plinius Caecilius Secundus, *Epistulae*).
- Non modo id habet in se mali quod tot civis *atrocissime sustulit* verum etiam ... (Cicero, *Pro Roscio Amerino*).
- *Valebat* apud vos, iudices, Milonis erga me remque publicam meritorum memoria (Cicero, *Pro Milone*).

- Sed certe ita *res se habet*, ut ex natura vivere summum bonum sit (Cicero, *De Legibus*).

- *Morte carens* vacua volat altus in aura spiritus (Ovid, *Tristia*).

◊

- Si Romam veniam, *tempus capiam* te visitandi.

- Demophoon, ventis et verba et *vela dedisti* (Ovid, *Epistulae*).

- Itaque ipsi, ne dicam mihi, rei publicae *poenas dederunt* (Cicero, *Philippicae*).

- Tibi si illa hodie nupserit, ego hanc continuo *uxorem ducam* (Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus*).

- Si hoc modo vincere non potest, *extrema omnia experietur*.

◊

- Aciem instruxit hostibusque pugnandi *potestatem fecit* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

- Antiochus epistulis *bellum gerit* (Cato, *Orationes*).

- Postea quam praetor est factus, modeste *se gessit* (Cicero, *In Sallustium Crispum*).

- Giton quidem super pectus meum positus diu *animam egit* (Petronius, *Satyrica*).

- Cum domum perveni, semper *famem et sitim pello*.

◊

- Nebulae magis *ima petunt* campoque recumbunt (Vergilius, *Georgica*).

- *Persuasum habeo posse fieri* ut sit actio bona quae non sit bona oratio (Plinius Caecilius Secundus, *Epistulae*).

- Nullo in loco *male audit* misericordia (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae*).

- Plerumque enim bona *in peius*, mala *mutantur in melius* (Servius Honoratus, *In Vergilii Bucolicon Librum*).

- *Causam egi* puerorum in senatu ut te arbitror e matris litteris potuisse cognoscere (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Brutum*).

- Iam ferme triginta [naves] in fronte erant, quibus ut aequaret laevum cornu, *altum petere* intendit (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

c/ A series of alternate exercises. In some, you must replace the English expressions with the Latin from the list; in others you must deduce which English expression corresponds to the meanings in italics:

1. WE NEED / HAS BECOME NORMAL PRACTICE / YOU GET MARRIED / PRACTISES / HAVE CROSSED THE LIMIT / SPENT HIS LIFE / ARE SURE

- *Quia persuasum habuerint animas hominum inmortales esse* (Valerius Maximus, *Facta et Dicta Memorabilia*).

The idiom means .....

- *Paulus profitetur rem militarem, Publius profitetur rem nauticam.*

The idiom means .....

- *Non ergo opus est adiutrice?* (Plautus, *Casina*).

The idiom means .....

- *Q. Fabius Maximus quam perditam luxuria vitam egit!* (Valerius Maximus, *Facta et Dicta Memorabilia*).

The idiom means .....

- *Hodie uxorem ducis?* (Terentius Afer, *Andria*).

The idiom means .....

- *Modum egressus es, mi amice! Hoc mihi non placet!*

The idiom means .....

- *Cotidie me exercere iam in consuetudinem venit.*

The idiom means .....

2. *delere / ludibrio esse / res cogat / orationem habere / tecum non facit / in crucem sustulit / in carcerem condidit*

- *Illo tamen potius utendum [est] consilio, si [it is necessary] .....* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

- *Ratio [does not support you] ....., noli hos captivos necare.*

- *Ceteros captivos, qui in triumpho ducti erant, [to be imprisoned] ..... placuit*  
(Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

- *Quis est quin velit omnia bella [to put an end to] .....* ?

- *Partim [civium Romanorum] in vinculis necavit, partim implorantis iura libertatis et civitatis [crucified]*  
..... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

- O spectaculum miserum atque acerbum! [to be used for mockery] ..... urbis gloriam, populi Romani nomen! (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Lex vetat eum, qui de pecuniis repetundis damnatus sit, in contione [to make a speech] ..... (Cicero, *Rhetorica ad Herennium*).

### 3. PROPOSE / IS FREED / GO / TO A SOUND MIND / HAD DISMANTLED / MAKE CRY / A POSITIVE ANSWER

- Caesar cognovit et montem ab suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

The idiom means .....

- Allobroges se ad Caesarem recipiunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

The idiom means .....

- De pace "uti rogas" omnes tribus iusserunt (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

The idiom means .....

- Servus cum manu mittitur fit libertinus (Quintilianus, *Institutio Oratoria*).

The idiom means .....

- Post cladem, dux numquam ad sanitatem reversus est.

The idiom means .....

- Non solum autem dicendo, sed etiam faciendo quaedam lacrimas movemus (Quintilianus, *Institutio Oratoria*).

The idiom means .....

- Tu vero istam Romae legem rogato (Cicero, *De Legibus*). ☺ A nice example of future imperative.

The idiom means .....

### 4. vocavit / poenas petat / habere / gerere / male narrant / plurimum poterat / atque oportet

- Visne semper in Italia vitam [to spend] ..... ?
- Cives semper [speak badly] ..... de senatoribus.
- Si quis aliter putat dici oportere [as it is convenient] ..... , non scientiam tollit orationis, sed suam inscientiam denudat (Terentius Varro, *De Lingua Latina*).
- Me a morte ad vitam, a desperatione ad spem, ab exitio ad salutem [made go] ..... (Cicero, *Post Reditum in Senatu*).

- Nihil est enim turpius quam cum eo bellum [to wage] ..... , quocum familiariter vixeris (Cicero, *Laelius de Amicitia*).
- Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos [had a lot of influence] ..... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Hunc Marius anxium adgreditur atque hortatur, ut contumeliarum in imperatorem cum suo auxilio [seek revenge] ..... (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*).

**5. COSTS / SET IN MOTION / IT SEEMED WELL / WITHDREW / TO BE IN COMMAND / BEHAVED / AN ASSET**

- Cum omnes se recepissent nostri ordines, recipere me novissimus coepi ad castra (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

The idiom means .....

- Ita se gessit ut nullam petendi consulatum cogitationem habere videretur (Velleius Paterculus, *Historia Romana*).

The idiom means .....

- Haec navis magno pretio stat.

The idiom means .....

- Interim consuli sententia stetit eo saltu [exercitum] ducere (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

The idiom means .....

- Gaudebat idem partem anni se agrum suum colere, gaudet nunc fructū sibi rem publicam esse, et laetus stipendum accipit (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

The idiom means .....

- Quia multis locis comprimenti tumultus erant qui temere oriebantur, placuit omnes qui dictatores consules censoresue fuissent cum imperio esse (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

The idiom means .....

- Exercitus signa sustulit et Romanum profectus est.

The idiom means .....

**6. exigas / naufragium / agebat / amabo te / in odium venit / cepit / verti**

- Ligus non aderat. L. frater eius causam [defended] ..... (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Si tamen tecum [meditate] ..... , veniam dabis (Seneca iunior, *Troades*).

- Thrasybulus, dux Milesiorum, ut portum Sicyoniorum occuparet, a terra subinde oppidanos temptavit et conversis hostibus classe inexpectata portum [arrived in] ..... (Iulius Frontinus, *Strategemata*).
- Aliquando [a shipwreck] ..... facimus, semper timemus (Seneca iunior, *Dialogi*).
- Nulla res citius [becomes hated] ..... quam dolor (Seneca iunior, *Epistulae Morales ad Lucilium*).
- Hoc viso, statim meam sententiam [changed] .....
- [Please] ..... , impera tibi hoc (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*).

**7. manu mittendum / egressus / novis rebus / male / studebant / moriar / te habes /**

- Da, obsecro, argentum huic, ne [badly] ..... loquatur (Plautus, *Asinaria*).
- Quindecim annos [at the age of] ..... , in Graeciam migravit.
- Eum [to be freed] ..... non censuerunt (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).
- [May I die] ..... si magis gauderem si id mihi accidisset (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).
- Quo modo [do you feel] ..... ?
- Cum intellegereret omnes fere Gallos [a revolution] ..... studere et ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitari, ... (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).
- Temporibus illis in Hispania nonnullae civitates rebus Cassii [supported] .....  
(anon., *Bellum Alexandrinum*).

**8. lege / missurum esse / opus / equo admisso / iacere / legit / flocci**

- Quid me tibi adesse [necessary] ..... est? (Plautus, *Bacchides*).
- Audio nunc pretia [are low] ..... , emamus novam domum.
- Vis hostes invenire? [Follow] ..... vestigia.
- Verres, Siciliae praetor, multa sacra [stole] .....
- Spero Ciceronem in senatu vocem pro me [will defend] .....
- [At full gallop] ..... in medium aciem Latinorum irruerat (Cicero, *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum*).
- Hos libros [very little] ..... aestimo, mihi non placent.

## b) Words that are easily confused

### 1. Non-verbal forms

[157]

Read these sentences, noting the meaning of the words in italics as well as the similarities within each group:

- Usque ad illam *aetatem* in senatum venire non potuit (Cicero, *Pro Flacco*).
- Nilus in *aestatem* crescit campisque redundat unicus in terris (Lucretius, *De Rerum Natura*).
- ◊
  - Circumspice, si quis *forte* est ex ea provincia, in qua tu triennum praefuisti, qui te nolit perisse (Cicero, *In Verrem*). *☞ This is really what I call "to be loved by everybody."*
  - *Forte* et saevum animal necavit illum iuvenem.
- ◊
  - Mihi enim *liber* esse non videtur, qui non aliquando nihil agit (Cicero, *De Oratore*).
  - Quid tandem habuit *liber* iste, quod tibi aut novum aut tanto usui posset esse? (Cicero, *Brutus*).
  - Saguntini suos *liberos* emori quam servos vivere maluerunt (Cicero, *Paradoxa Stoicorum*).
- ◊
  - Q. Pompeius, humili atque obscuro loco *natus*, nonne plurimis inimicitiis maximisque suis periculis ac laboribus amplissimos honores *est adeptus?* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
  - Saepe hoc maiores *natu* dicere audivi (Cicero, *Pro Murena*).
- ◊
  - Athenienses tam propinquuo tamque magno permoti auxilium *nusquam* nisi a Lacedaemoniis petiverunt (Nepos, *Vitae*).
  - Erat cum eo quidam ex Arcadia hospes, qui *numquam* discedere voluerat (Nepos, *Vitae*)
 *☞ This always happens with guests.*
- ◊
  - Tantus in curia clamor factus est ut *populus* concurreret (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
  - *Populum* in horto habes? *☞ Of course, this sentence could be interpreted as humorous.*



- His rebus cognitis Marcius Rufus quaestor in castris *relictus a Curione cohortatur suos, ne animo deficiant* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Nullus est *reliquus rex, nulla gens, nulla natio quam pertimescatis* (Cicero, *Pro Rabirio*).



- Cur igitur *victus est?* Quia non semper viator a latrone, non numquam etiam latro a viatore occiditur (Cicero, *Pro Milone*).
- Puto eos in Graecia bene *victuros esse*, nam multos amicos habent.



- Militum *vires inopia frumenti deminuerat* (Caesar, *Bellum Civile*).
- Sodales, *virи fortес, legati тui primo anno te reliquerunt* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris *viribus succedebant* (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).



- Erat comes eius Rubrius *quidam, homo factus ad istius libidines* (Cicero, *In Verrem*).
- Vita ita turpis ne morti *quidem honestae locum relinquit* (Cicero, *Pro Quinctio*).

## 2. Verbal forms

[158]

Read these sentences, noting the meaning of the verbs in italics as well as the similarities within each group, and write the main parts of the verb: ◇ Note: A verb may have been repeated.

- Odi enim celebritatem, *fugio* homines, lucem aspicere vix possum (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).

Verb: .....

- Hos Conon magno proelio *fugat* (Nepos, *Vitae*).

Verb: .....



- Sed ego non loquor de sapientia, quae non *cadit* in hanc aetatem; de impetu animi loquor, de cupiditate vincendi (Cicero, *Pro Caelio*).

Verb: .....

- Inrumpit et concursantes per vias pavidos *caedit* (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

Verb: .....



- ... magnumque ex iis numerum *occidit* atque omnes armis exuit (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

Verb: .....

- Sed non loquor de nobis, de illis loquor qui occiderunt (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

Verb: .....



- Sed quid ego de eis omnibus qui consulari imperio *paruerunt* loquor? (Cicero, *Pro Rabirio*).

Verb: .....

- Ad resistendum me *paro* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).

Verb: .....

- Nocentem qui defendit, sibi crimen *parit* (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae*).

Verb: .....

- Lex nulla capto *parcit* aut poenam impedit (Seneca, *Troades*).

Verb: .....



- Hannibal in Africam *redire* atque Italia decidere coactus est (Cicero, *In Catilinam*).

Verb: .....

- Improbus est homo qui beneficium scit accipere et *reddere* nescit (Plautus, *Persa*).

Verb: .....



- Tam bene qui *servit*, serviat iste mihi! (Ovid, *Epistulae*).

Verb: .....

- Ut iurat! *Servat* me ille suis periuriis (Plautus, *Bacchides*).

Verb: .....

- Me una vobiscum *servare* non possum (Caesar, *De Bello Gallico*).

Verb: .....



- Abi intro. Noli *stare* (Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus*).

Verb: .....

- Consul ubi ad iniquum locum ventum est, *sistit* aciem (Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita*).

Verb: .....



- Te per eos dies nemo tuae domi convenire, nemo in foro *videre* potuit (Cicero, *In Verrem*).

Verb: .....

- Iam pridem cupio Alexandriam reliquamque Aegyptum *visere* (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum*).

Verb: .....